

RECOMMENDED BY MEMBERS  
OF THE ADOBE INDESIGN  
DEVELOPMENT TEAM

R E A L  W O R L D

# ADOBE InDesign® CS5

INDUSTRIAL-STRENGTH PUBLISHING TECHNIQUES



OLAV MARTIN KVERN, DAVID BLATNER and BOB BRINGHURST

∞  
*for Amy and Max*  
✧  
*Gabriel and Daniel*  
✧  
*Wendy*

**REAL WORLD ADOBE INDESIGN CS5**

Olav Martin Kvern, David Blatner, and Bob Bringhurst

Copyright © 2011 by Olav Kvern and David Blatner

**PEACHPIT PRESS**

1249 Eighth Street  
Berkeley, California 94710  
(510) 524-2178  
(510) 524-2221 (fax)

Find us on the web at: [www.peachpit.com](http://www.peachpit.com)

Peachpit Press is a division of Pearson Education

*Real World Adobe InDesign CS5* is published in association with Adobe Press

Production editor: Lisa Brazieal

Indexer: Jan C. Wright

Cover design: Charlene Charles-Will

Cover illustration: John Weber

Interior design, illustration, and production: Olav Martin Kvern, David Blatner, and Bob Bringhurst

**NOTICE OF RIGHTS**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher. For information on getting permission for reprints and excerpts, contact [permissions@peachpit.com](mailto:permissions@peachpit.com).

**CREDITS**

Thanks to the Seattle Gilbert and Sullivan Society and their photographer, Ray O. Welch, for giving us permission to use some of their archival photographs as example images. Thanks to Minette Layne for the sea critter pictures. And special thanks to the late Ed Poole for the free use and abuse of his moustache.

**NOTICE OF LIABILITY**

The information in this book is distributed on an “As Is” basis, without warranty. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of the book, neither the authors nor Peachpit Press, shall have any liability to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damage caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by the instructions contained in this book or by the computer software and hardware products described in it.

**TRADEMARKS**

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and Peachpit Press was aware of a trademark claim, the designations appear as requested by the owner of the trademark. All other product names and services identified throughout this book are used in editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies with no intention of infringement of the trademark. No such use, or the use of any trade name, is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with this book.

ISBN 13: 978-0-321-71305-6

ISBN 10: 0-321-71305-2

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed and bound in the United States of America



# CONTENTS



	<b>Introduction</b> . . . . .	xi
<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	<b>Workspace</b> . . . . .	1
	Layout and Story Windows . . . . .	2
	Managing Multiple Windows . . . . .	7
	InDesign's Panels . . . . .	9
	Using the Tools Panel . . . . .	17
	Other Panels . . . . .	27
	Context Menus . . . . .	29
	Keyboard Shortcuts . . . . .	29
	Customizing Menus . . . . .	32
	Customizing the Control Panel . . . . .	34
	Saving and Loading Workspaces . . . . .	34
	Setting Preferences . . . . .	35
	Setting Defaults . . . . .	62
	Publication Navigation . . . . .	62
	Place Icons . . . . .	67
	Managing InDesign's Plug-Ins . . . . .	67
	On with the Tour . . . . .	68
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	<b>Page Layout</b> . . . . .	69
	Creating a New Publication . . . . .	70
	Opening Publications . . . . .	73
	Saving Publications . . . . .	75
	Crash Recovery . . . . .	77
	Setting Basic Layout Options . . . . .	77
	Pages and Spreads . . . . .	78
	Adding Pages . . . . .	82
	Arranging Pages . . . . .	83
	Creating pages of different sizes . . . . .	86
	Rotating Spreads . . . . .	89
	Defining Sections . . . . .	90
	Numbering Pages . . . . .	92
	Adding Section Marker Text . . . . .	93
	Working with Master Pages . . . . .	93

	Applying Master Pages and Master Spreads . . . . .	97
	Overriding Master Items . . . . .	100
	Adjusting Layouts . . . . .	101
	Selecting and Deselecting . . . . .	104
	Guides . . . . .	108
	Grids . . . . .	119
	Stacking Objects . . . . .	120
	Layers . . . . .	123
	Grouping Objects . . . . .	131
	Locking Object Positions . . . . .	132
	Deleting Objects . . . . .	132
	Finding and Changing Objects . . . . .	133
	A Good Foundation . . . . .	134
CHAPTER 3	<b>Text</b> . . . . .	135
	Creating Text Frames . . . . .	136
	Setting Text Frame Options . . . . .	138
	Spanning and Splitting Columns . . . . .	143
	Linking and Unlinking Text Frames . . . . .	145
	Flowing Text . . . . .	150
	Entering Text . . . . .	155
	Text Variables . . . . .	161
	Cross References . . . . .	177
	Importing Text . . . . .	180
	Importing and Exporting Buzzword Files . . . . .	189
	Text Files and File Linking . . . . .	189
	Exporting Text . . . . .	190
	Editing Text . . . . .	190
	Story Editor . . . . .	193
	Track Changes . . . . .	196
	Notes . . . . .	197
	Using Adobe InCopy . . . . .	199
	Checking Spelling . . . . .	200
	Footnotes . . . . .	205
	Conditional Text . . . . .	209
	Find and Change . . . . .	212
	Working with InDesign Tagged Text . . . . .	230
	After Words . . . . .	234
CHAPTER 4	<b>Type</b> . . . . .	235
	Character Formatting . . . . .	237
	OpenType Fonts . . . . .	256

	Find Font .....	261
	Filling and Stroking Characters .....	262
	Paragraph Formatting .....	262
	Bullets and Numbering .....	292
	Styles .....	301
	Copying Styles from Other Publications .....	317
	Optical Margin Alignment .....	318
	An Old Typesetter Never.....	320
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	<b>Drawing.....</b>	<b>321</b>
	Drawing Basic Shapes .....	322
	Points and Paths .....	323
	Drawing Paths with the Pencil Tool .....	326
	Drawing Paths with the Pen Tool .....	327
	Drawing Techniques.....	328
	Compound Paths .....	333
	Smoothing Paths .....	335
	Erasing Paths .....	336
	Path Operations.....	337
	Corner Options .....	341
	Strokes.....	342
	Stroke Styles .....	350
	Fills .....	353
	Gradients .....	355
	Transparency .....	360
	Transparency Effects.....	366
	Drawing Conclusions .....	376
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	<b>Where Text Meets Graphics .....</b>	<b>377</b>
	Paragraph Rules.....	378
	Tables .....	383
	Creating a Table.....	384
	Editing Tables .....	387
	Table Shortcuts .....	400
	Formatting Tables .....	401
	Table and Cell Styles .....	411
	Text Wrap .....	416
	Converting Text to Outlines .....	420
	Inline Frames and Anchored Objects.....	422
	Object Styles .....	437
	Placing Text on a Path .....	442
	Quick Apply .....	448

	Figure Captions . . . . .	451
	Alternate Reality . . . . .	454
CHAPTER 7	<b>Importing and Exporting . . . . .</b>	<b>455</b>
	Importing . . . . .	456
	Placing Anything . . . . .	457
	About Graphic File Formats . . . . .	460
	Image Resolution and Scaling . . . . .	463
	Graphic Display Properties . . . . .	464
	Image Import Options . . . . .	466
	Linking and Embedding . . . . .	472
	Working with Graphic Frames . . . . .	481
	File Info and Metadata . . . . .	486
	Object Layer Options . . . . .	488
	Working with Clipping Paths . . . . .	490
	Applying Color to an Imported Graphic . . . . .	494
	Exporting Documents . . . . .	494
	Exporting JPEG . . . . .	495
	Exporting EPS . . . . .	496
	Exporting PDF for Printing . . . . .	499
	InDesign Markup Language (IDML) . . . . .	515
	Snippets . . . . .	516
	Exporting HTML . . . . .	517
	Data Merge . . . . .	523
	XML . . . . .	530
	The Best of All Possible Worlds . . . . .	534
CHAPTER 8	<b>Long Documents . . . . .</b>	<b>535</b>
	Books . . . . .	536
	Table of Contents . . . . .	545
	Indexes (Or Indices) . . . . .	552
	Putting It Together . . . . .	566
CHAPTER 9	<b>Transforming . . . . .</b>	<b>567</b>
	Transformation Basics . . . . .	568
	Numbers Are Your Friends . . . . .	573
	Moving Objects . . . . .	576
	Scaling . . . . .	578
	Rotating Objects . . . . .	583
	Reflecting Objects . . . . .	586
	Shearing Objects . . . . .	586
	Repeating Transformations . . . . .	589

	Grid Mode .....	592
	Aligning and Distributing Objects .....	593
	Locking Objects .....	597
	Hiding Objects .....	598
	Transform Your Life! .....	598
CHAPTER 10	<b>Color</b> .....	599
	Seeing Color, Printing Color .....	600
	Color in InDesign .....	600
	InDesign's Color Controls .....	602
	The Color Panel and the Color Picker .....	616
	Applying Colors and Gradients .....	618
	Kuler .....	619
	Ink Manager .....	621
	Trapping .....	622
	Color Management .....	623
	InDesign's Color Management Controls .....	626
	The Color "Done" .....	640
CHAPTER 11	<b>Printing</b> .....	641
	The InDesign Print Dialog Box .....	642
	General .....	644
	Setup .....	648
	Marks and Bleeds .....	651
	Output .....	653
	Graphics .....	658
	Color Management .....	662
	Advanced .....	662
	Summary .....	664
	Print Presets .....	664
	Custom Printer Marks .....	666
	Printing Booklets .....	667
	Separations Preview .....	671
	Printing Transparency .....	673
	Preparing an InDesign File for Imagesetting .....	682
	Preflight and Package .....	683
	All the News That Prints to Fit .....	688
CHAPTER 12	<b>Scripting</b> .....	689
	Be Not Afraid .....	690
	System Requirements .....	690
	Learning About InDesign Scripting .....	693

	Thinking About Scripting . . . . .	696
	Using the Scripts Panel and the Script Label Panel . . . . .	697
	Getting Started. . . . .	699
	More Fun with Scripting . . . . .	702
	End Script. . . . .	704
CHAPTER 13	<b>Interactive Documents . . . . .</b>	<b>.705</b>
	Hyperlinks . . . . .	707
	Bookmarks . . . . .	714
	Buttons . . . . .	715
	Multi-State Objects . . . . .	721
	Audio and Video . . . . .	723
	Animation . . . . .	727
	Page Transitions. . . . .	733
	Previewing Interactive Documents . . . . .	734
	Presentation Mode . . . . .	735
	Interactive PDF Export. . . . .	736
	SWF Export . . . . .	737
	FLA Export . . . . .	739
	Web Publishing . . . . .	740
	<b>Index . . . . .</b>	<b>.741</b>

## INTRODUCTION



We're desktop publishers—just like you. We've been through the long shifts (some of them longer than 70 hours), entering and editing text, setting type, drawing paths, importing images, and trying to get files to print. On most of those late nights and early mornings, we could have been home in bed if we had known just one key piece of information. But we weren't. There was no one there to tell us.

We're here to tell you.

If some piece of information in this book saves you one late night, one early morning, or gets your document to print on the first pass through the imagesetter instead of the second or third, we will have succeeded in our purpose.

---

### How This Book Was Produced

To answer the question we've been asked so many times: Yes, we produced this book in Adobe InDesign. We wrote some sections in Microsoft Word, saved them as RTF files, and imported them into InDesign. We wrote other sections using InDesign's Story Editor. We captured screens using Snapz Pro and SnagIt. To produce other graphics, we used InDesign's tools, Photoshop, and Illustrator.

David and Bob used 15-inch MacBook Pro laptops running Mac OS 10.6 (and Windows 7 under VMWare Fusion). Ole laid out chapters on a homebrew system (he's a gamer—what do you expect?) running Windows XP and on a Thinkpad T61p running Windows 7.

We used Adobe's Minion Pro family for our body text—a workhorse typeface that manages to look both modern and classical at the same time. It takes years to really get to know a typeface, and we've reached a point of happy familiarity with this one. For code, we used TheSansMonoCondensed, by Lucas de Groot (from [lucasfonts.com](http://lucasfonts.com)). We think it is the best monospaced font available for setting code (much, much better than the Courier everyone else uses).

## Real World Concerns

Since this is a “Real World” book, we’re going to talk a bit about some of our real world challenges. It’s not just the kids, our spouses/partners, and various life events that seem to make producing a book difficult. It’s the macroeconomic climate and how it affects the microeconomy of writing and producing a computer book.

First, you may have noticed some large-scale economic changes in the last few years. Due to the World Economy falling off a cliff, everyone’s either broke or scared, and, either way, they’re not spending any money on software upgrades or third-party how-to books. Next, printed books just aren’t doing that well as a market or medium. Finally, the cost of paper, relative to the total cost of printing, has gone through the roof.

If we wanted to publish this book, we were told, we’d have to cut pages. About a hundred pages. While adding all of the new features in InDesign CS5.

This meant not only cutting jokes and charming anecdotes, but making really tough decisions about what sections to pull out of the book; what sections to reduce to their bare essentials, and what sections to put online (see “Bonus Materials,” below).

We considered publishing this as an entirely online book. We considered breaking it into separate chapters and selling them *a la carte*. We thought about keeping the CS4 version in print and creating a shorter “What’s New?” title that covered only the differences since the earlier version. We couldn’t think of a way that made any kind of economic sense, given the time frame that we had.

We’re still thinking about it. We think we came up with the right blend of cuts, additions, and online bonus materials, but we’re open to new ideas. If you have an opinion on what future form this information should take, please let us know.

---

## Bonus Materials

We cut a lot of information out of this book to keep the size down. Bonus materials include XML workflow information (an entire chapter), scripting resources, and more. To access this material on the web, you will need to register your book. Go to this link:

[www.peachpit.com/realworldindesigncs5](http://www.peachpit.com/realworldindesigncs5)

After you’ve registered, click “Access to protected content” next to the book title in your registered products list.



---

## Welcome, Bob!

Ole and David's circumstances have changed since the last edition—changed in ways that make it difficult for them to crank out another book as they have in the past. Ole's job at Adobe has become much more demanding—he doesn't have any "slow times" anymore (as he usually did after a Creative Suite release in his previous position). David...well, it's hard to describe just how chaotic and demanding David's life and work are right now. We were thinking that we wouldn't be able to write and update an edition for InDesign CS5, and had pretty much decided not to do it.

With that, David and Ole would like to introduce Bob Bringhurst, our new co-author. Bob is a definite partner, and brings a fresh voice to the book. He's a fantastic guy, and great to work with. We're delighted to have him with us.

As an Adobe employee for the last 12 years, Bob has written documentation for every InDesign version since InDesign 1.0. He has been the *only* InDesign writer since InDesign CS2. Bob had also written third party software books and magazine articles (on WordPerfect and Word) before working at Adobe.

The figures lying in the snow in some of the new images in this edition are Bob's children, not members of the Franklin Expedition or Scott's doomed attempt to reach the South Pole.

---

## Acknowledgments

Thanks to Adobe's InDesign team and all the other folks at (or *formerly at* Adobe—another sign of the economic hard times we referred to) Adobe who helped support this book—including Michael Ninness, Lynly Schambers-Lenox, Whitney McCleary, Chad Siegel, Bur Davis, Angie Hammond, Matt Phillips, Tommy Donovan, Douglas Waterfall, Eric Menninga, David Stephens, Jonathan Brown, Alan Stearns, Dov Isaacs, Zak Williamson, Paul Sorrick, Mark Niemann-Ross, Christine Yarrow, John Hake, Adrian O'Lenskie, and the other members of the Adobe Developer Technologies group (especially Lee Huang, Ole's long-suffering neighbor).

We appreciate the growing web of InDesign users and trainers with whom we love to trade cool tips and tricks, including Bob Levine, Anne-Marie Concepción, Sandee Cohen, Claudia McCue, Steve Werner, Pariah S. Burke, Scott Citron, Rufus Deuchler, Diane Burns, Avery Raskin, Dave Saunders, Branislav Milic, Mordy Golding, Mike Rankin, Michael Murphy, Pam Pfiffner, and Ted LoCascio.

Thanks to Jan C. Wright, Queen of Indexing, for our index. She won the 2009 ASI/H.W. Wilson Award for Excellence in Indexing, sometimes referred to as the “Pulitzer Prize of Indexing” for a previous edition—the first time a technical book has ever won the award.

Thanks to our friends at Peachpit Press for their patience, support, professionalism, patience, and understanding (and did we mention patience?), including Nancy Ruenzel, Nancy Davis, our editor Susan Rimerman, Lisa “see myk” Brazieal, and Charlene Will.

**DAVID:** “My deepest appreciation to my wife and partner, Debbie Carlson, as well as to our sons Gabriel and Daniel, who ensured that sanity wouldn’t gain the upper hand. My thanks, too, go to Anne-Marie, Niyaz, Ted Falcon, and many other friends and helpers.”

**OLE:** “Thanks to my incredible friends, to my partner, Amy Lanset, and to my son, Max Olav Kvern, for their love and support.”

**BOB:** “All my thanks go to my wife Wendy, as well as to my twin sons Luke and Max, who agreed to be ignored for a few months while I worked on this book.”

Olav Martin Kvern  
okvern@ix.netcom.com

David Blatner  
david@indesignsecrets.com

Bob Bringhurst  
bobbringhurst@gmail.com

# Type

## CHAPTER

# 4

Ole's tale: "Late night. The pale glow from the monochrome monitor of my Compugraphic phototypesetter. The smell of the office standard 'French Vanilla' coffee—warming, now, for several hours and resembling nothing so much as battery acid. The gentle snoring of one of the staff writers, who is curled up in the warmth of the unit that holds the filmstrips containing the fonts I'm using to set his story.

"These are the things I think of when I hear the word 'typesetting'—they're memories from my job at Seattle's free rock and roll newspaper *The Rocket*, circa 1982. Desktop publishing didn't exist yet, and digital (as opposed to photo) typesetting systems—with their WYSIWYG displays—were rare. The codes and characters I saw on my screen wouldn't look anything like type until they were printed, one character at a time, on a strip of photographic film and developed. I could set just about any kind of type using that machine, provided the characters would fit on a piece of film not more than seven inches wide, and provided I didn't need to use characters from more than six fonts."

When desktop publishing appeared, we found that it couldn't do everything Ole could do with his Compugraphic—but that being able to see what our type would look like *before we printed it* more than made up for any deficiencies. These days, page layout programs are far more capable than Ole's trusty EditWriter. Does that mean, however, that there's no more room for improvement? For surprising new features? Is typesetting "done"?

Not a chance—InDesign offers a number of improvements and surprises in the area of typesetting. It's an evolutionary product—not a revolutionary one, but, on its release, InDesign became the best desktop typesetting program, and raised the bar for its competition.

In this chapter, we'll walk through InDesign's typesetting features. We'll start with character formatting (font, point size, kerning, and baseline shift are examples of character formatting), move on to paragraph formatting (indents, tabs, space above and below, and composition), and then dive into formatting using character and paragraph styles. Along the way, there may be a joke or two.

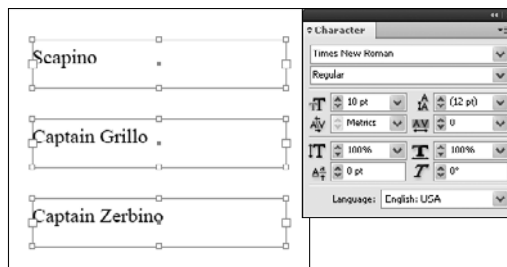
## Selecting and Formatting Text

Generally, when you want to change the formatting of some text, you have to select it with the Type tool. However, there are two caveats to this statement. First, because paragraph formatting (which we'll discuss later) always applies to an entire paragraph, you don't have to select every character in the paragraph before applying it.

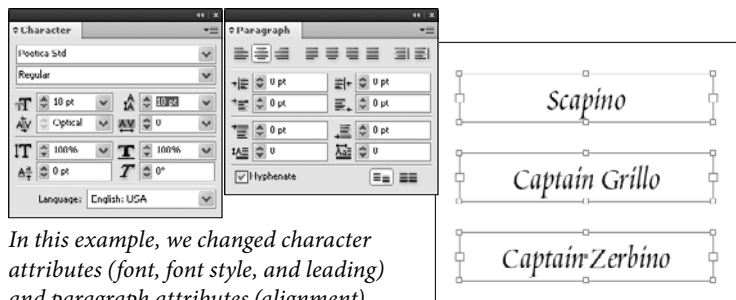
Second (and more interesting) is that you can apply text formatting to text frames you've selected using the Selection tool or the Direct Selection tool. When you do this, InDesign applies the formatting to all of the text in the text frame, including any overset text. InDesign won't let you use this method to apply formatting to text frames that are linked to other text frames. Tired of using the Type tool to select and format every photo caption on a page? Use the Selection tool to select them all and apply your formatting—it's easier, and it's quicker (see Figure 4-1).

**FIGURE 4-1**  
**Formatting the Text in Text Frames**

*Use the Selection tool to select the text frames you want to format...*



*...and apply formatting.  
InDesign applies the formatting to all of the text in the text frames.  
That's all there is to it.*



*In this example, we changed character attributes (font, font style, and leading) and paragraph attributes (alignment).*

The ability to apply formatting with the Selection tools is very powerful, but it's also slightly dangerous. Let's say you set a single character to Zapf Dingbats somewhere in your text frame. If you select the text frame using the Selection tool and then apply a new font, every character—including that dingbat—gets changed.

The only warnings that InDesign gives you that some of the text in the selected text frame uses a different font are: the Font field in the Character panel is blank, and the Font submenu (under the Type menu) has hyphens next to each font.

---

## Character Formatting

Character formatting controls the appearance of the individual letters in your publication. Font, type size, color, and leading are all aspects of character formatting. (Longtime QuarkXPress users won't think of leading as a character format, but we'll cover that next.)

We refer to all formatting that can be applied to a selected range of text as “character” formatting, and refer to formatting that InDesign applies at the paragraph level as “paragraph” formatting. Tab settings, indents, paragraph rules, space above, and space after are examples of paragraph formatting. There are areas of overlap in these definitions. Leading, for example, is really a property that applies to an entire *line* of text (InDesign uses only the largest leading value in a line), but we'll call it “character” formatting, nonetheless, because you can apply it to individual characters.

In addition to these distinctions, InDesign's paragraph styles can include character formatting, but apply to entire paragraphs. See “Styles,” later in this chapter.

### Character Formatting Controls

InDesign's character formatting controls are found in both the Character panel and the Control panel (see Figure 4-2). The controls in the panels are substantially the same, so we'll discuss them once.

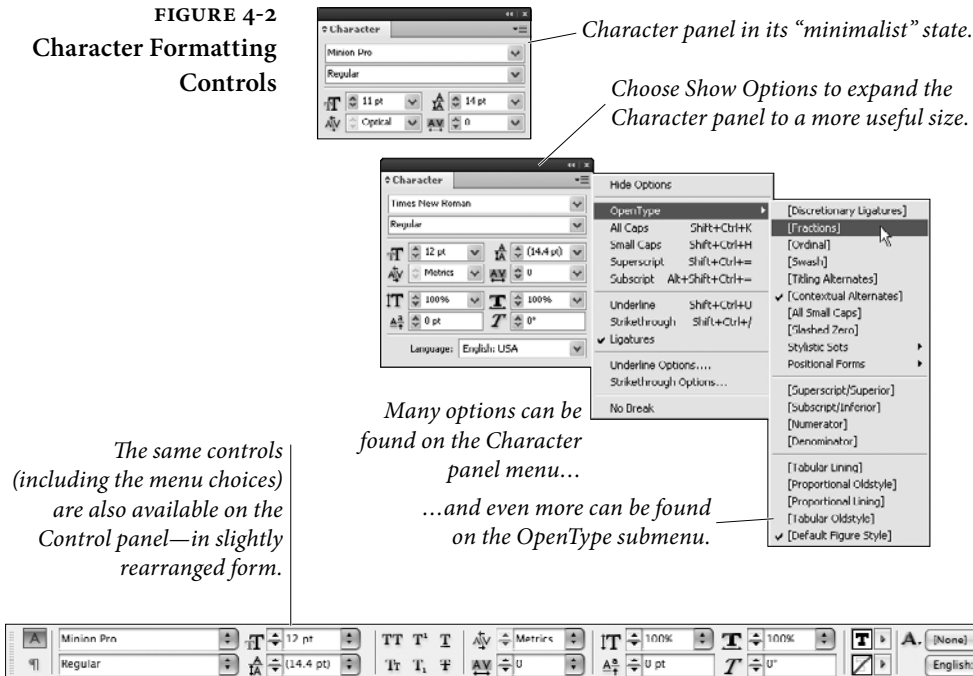
To display the Character panel and shift the focus to the panel's Font field, press Command-T/Ctrl-T. If the panel is already visible, InDesign hides it; you may need to press it twice.

To display the Control panel, press Command-Option-6/Ctrl-Alt-6. If the panel is already open, but is displaying the paragraph controls, press Command-Option-7/Ctrl-Alt-7.

### Font Family and Font

Selecting a font in InDesign is a little bit different than selecting a font in most other page layout programs. To InDesign, fonts are categorized as font “families,” and each family is made up of one or

**FIGURE 4-2**  
**Character Formatting Controls**



more type styles. A font family is a set of typefaces designed to have a common “look.” A “font,” then, is specified by its font family and type style. In this book, we’ve used the font family Minion Pro, and the type style Regular for the body text—so the font of the body text is “Minion Pro Regular.”

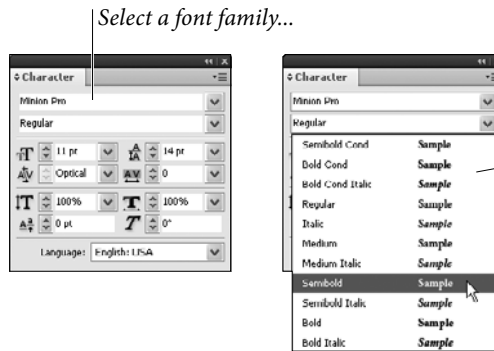
InDesign’s user interface for selecting fonts mirrors this approach. When you choose a font from the Font submenu of the Type menu, you must select both the font family and a specific type style.

Note that InDesign does not have “type styles” in the same way that other programs do—it makes no assumption that the selected font family has a “bold” or “italic” member, and will never *generate* a fake bold or italic version. If you don’t have a font for a particular type style, you won’t see it on the Type Styles menu (see Figure 4-3).

To select a font family or type style, you can type into the appropriate field—you don’t have to use the menu. As you type the name of a font family or type style, InDesign will display the available font or fonts that match the characters you typed. For instance you can type “T” and it will guess “Tekton” (if you have that font installed); if you meant “Times” then you may have to type “Ti” or even “Tim”. Note that you can also press the up and down arrow keys, which is especially helpful in the Style field to move from Regular to Bold to Italic, and so on.

**FIGURE 4-3**  
Selecting a Font

*On the Mac OS, you can choose the family and style from the Font pop-up menu in a single step.*



*...and then select a type style. InDesign will not generate fake bold or italic type styles.*

*The number of type styles available varies from family to family.*

**Font Style Keyboard Shortcuts.** Although InDesign won't generate a bold or italic weight, you can type Command-Shift-B/Ctrl-Shift-B to make your text bold and Command-Shift-I/Ctrl-Shift-I to make it italic. If a font doesn't have a bold or italic version, InDesign will not change the text.

**Symbols and Dingbats.** Sometimes, when you change to a symbol font (such as Zapf Dingbats), you may encounter font substitution (the dreaded pink highlight). This can happen because InDesign is attempting to map the character from one font to another. To avoid this problem, hold down Shift as you apply the font.

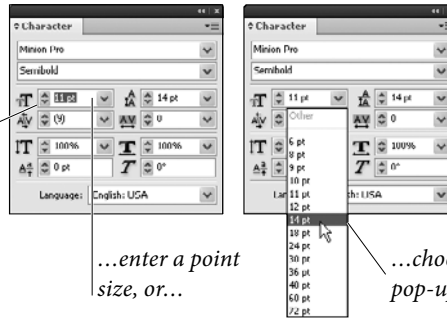
**Duplicate Font Names.** Some folks have more than one font with the same name on their systems—such as a TrueType and a PostScript version of Times Roman. While most programs just pick one (and you never know which you're getting), InDesign displays both fonts, including either T1 or TT in parentheses after the font name.

**Size** You can change the size of text by entering the point size you want in the Size field of the Character or Control panel, or choose a point size from the attached pop-up menu (see Figure 4-4). If you type the size, you can specify it in .001-point increments. After you've entered the size you want, apply the change by pressing Return/Enter or by pressing Tab to move to another field.

**Size Adjustment Keyboard Shortcuts.** You can increase the size of selected type by pressing Command-Shift->/Ctrl-Shift->, or decrease the size by pressing Command-Shift-</Ctrl-Shift-<. The amount that InDesign increases or decreases the point size when you use these shortcuts depends on the value in the Size/Leading field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box.

**FIGURE 4-4**  
**Point Size**

Click the “nudge”  
buttons, or...



...enter a point  
size, or...

...choose a size from the  
pop-up menu.

To increase or decrease the size of the selected text by five times the value entered in the Size/Leading field, you can add the Option or Alt key: Command-Option-Shift->/Ctrl-Alt-Shift->, or Command-Option-Shift-</Ctrl-Alt-Shift-<.

**Scaling Text by Scaling the Frame.** You can scale text by scaling the frame itself. To do this, select the text frame with the Selection tool, then hold down the Command/Ctrl key and drag a corner or side handle. Hold down Command-Shift/Ctrl-Shift as you drag to scale proportionally (a good thing, as far as text is concerned).

**Leading** Text characters—usually—sit on an imaginary line, the *baseline*. *Leading* (pronounced “ledding”) is the vertical distance from the baseline of one line of text to the next text baseline. When you hear “10 on 12” or see “10/12”, it means “10-point text on 12-point leading.” In InDesign, leading is measured from the baseline of a line of text to the baseline of the line of text above (see Figure 4-5). When you increase the leading in a line, you push that line farther from the line above it, and farther down from the top of the text frame.

In InDesign—as in PageMaker—leading is an attribute of individual characters, but the largest leading value in a line predominates (see Figure 4-6). This differs from QuarkXPress, where leading is a paragraph attribute (although if you use QuarkXPress’s relative leading mode, the largest leading in a line predominates).

For those of us who came to desktop publishing from typesetting, the idea of leading being a character attribute seems more natural than QuarkXPress’ method of setting it at the paragraph level. Fortunately, InDesign lets you have it both ways: When you turn on the Apply Leading to Entire Paragraphs option in the Type pane of the Preferences dialog box, the program automatically sets the leading of every character in a paragraph to the same value. QuarkXPress users will probably want to turn this option on.



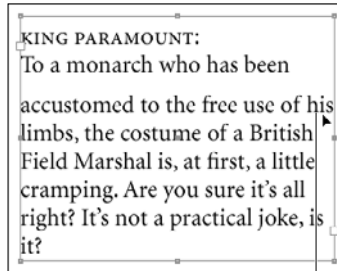
**FIGURE 4-5**  
Leading

*Leading is the distance from the baseline of one line to the baseline of the line above it.*

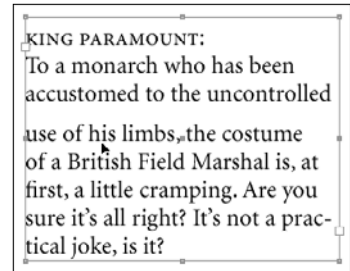


*You set the leading of selected characters using the Leading control—enter a value, click the arrows, or choose a value from the pop-up menu. You can also choose Auto from the pop-up menu to base the leading on the point size of the text.*

**FIGURE 4-6**  
The Largest Leading in a Line Wins



*This word has a larger leading value than the other characters in the line.*



*When the word moves to another line (due, in this example, to a change in the text), the larger leading is applied to that line.*

However, this preference only affects paragraphs that you change *after* you set it. For instance, you could have it on most of the time, then turn it off in order to vary the leading of lines within a paragraph—something you sometimes have to do to optically balance display copy—and then turn the preference back on again.

**How to Avoid Wacky Leading.** The main disadvantage of making leading a character attribute (when the Apply Leading to Entire Paragraphs option is turned off) is that it requires a bit more vigilance on your part than the “leading-as-a-paragraph-attribute” approach taken by QuarkXPress and most word processors. Most of the time, leading values should be the same for all of the characters in the paragraph. If, as you apply leading amounts, you fail to select all of the characters in a paragraph, you’ll get leading that varies from line to line—which, most of the time, is a typesetting mistake.

You can also get this effect if you leave your paragraph’s leading set to the default Auto leading, which always sets the leading to some percentage (usually 120%) of the text size—or, more specifically, some percentage of the largest character on a line. This is true even when Apply to Entire Paragraph is turned on. We strongly urge you not to use Auto leading (except for inline frames and graphics, as discussed in Chapter 6, “Where Text Meets Graphics”).

If you've seen paragraphs where the leading of the last line of the paragraph is clearly different from that of the lines above it, you know exactly what we're talking about (see Figure 4-7).

It's simple—the carriage return, that sneaky invisible character, can have a different leading value than the other lines in the paragraph. When the person formatting the text selected the paragraph, they failed to select the carriage return. To avoid this, make sure you select the entire paragraph before applying formatting. Better yet, apply a paragraph style. When you apply a paragraph style, InDesign applies the character formatting specified in the style—including leading—to every character in the paragraph.

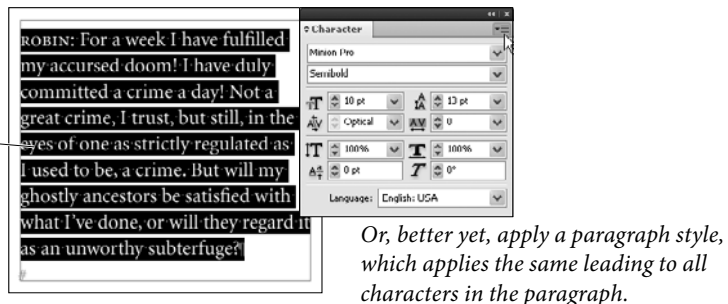
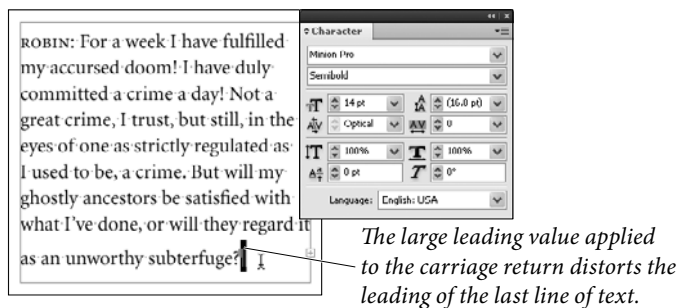
**Leading Shortcuts.** You can decrease the leading of selected type by pressing Option-Up arrow/Alt-Up arrow, or increase the size by pressing Option-Down arrow/Alt-Down arrow. (Yes, this does seem counterintuitive; think of it as pushing the line up or down.) The amount that InDesign increases or decreases the leading depends on the value you entered in the Size/Leading field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box (for more on units and increments, see Chapter 1, “Workspace”).

To decrease the leading of the selected text by five times the value in the Size/Leading field, press Command-Option-Up arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Up arrow. To increase the leading by the same amount, press Command-Option-Down arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Down arrow.

**FIGURE 4-7**  
**That Crazy Carriage Return**

*In this example, the carriage return character carries an Auto leading value and point size left over from previous paragraph formatting (the leading of the rest of the text in the paragraph is 13 points).*

*To avoid this problem, select the entire paragraph before applying character formatting—this selects the carriage return character.*



**Leading Techniques.** Here are a few tips for adjusting leading.

- ▶ Increase leading as you increase line length (the column width). Solid leading (such as 12 point text on 12 points leading) produces almost unreadable text for all but the narrowest of lines.
- ▶ Use extra leading for sans serif or bold type.
- ▶ Fonts with a small x-height (the height of the lowercase “x” in relation to the height of the capital letters) can often use a smaller leading value than those with a large x-height.
- ▶ Decrease leading as point size increases. Large display or headline type needs less leading than body copy. You can often get by with solid leading or less—just make certain that the descenders of one line don’t bump into the ascenders of the line below.

**Kerning** The goal of kerning—the adjustment of the space between characters—is to achieve even spacing. InDesign offers both pair kerning (the adjustment of the space between adjacent characters) and tracking (or “range kerning”)—the adjustment of all of the inter-character spaces in a series of characters.

For each space between any pair of characters in a publication, InDesign applies the total of the pair kerning and tracking values (so if you set kerning to 50 and tracking to –50, you will not see any change in the composition of the text).

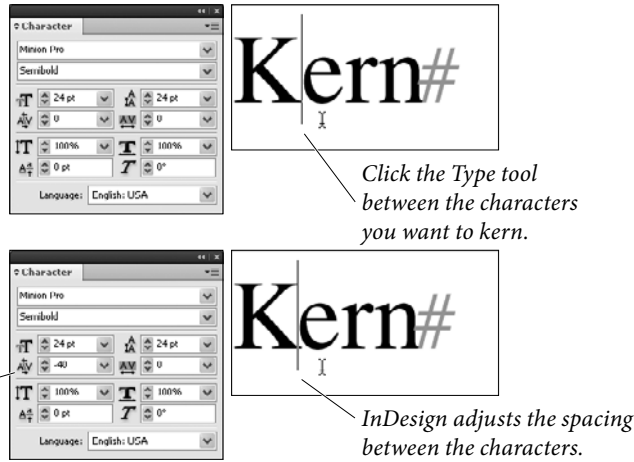
InDesign adjusts kerning using units equal to one-thousandth of an em. An *em* is equal in width to the size of the type—for instance, in 18 point text, an em is 18 points wide, and so each unit in the kerning or tracking fields equals  $\frac{1}{1,000}$  point (about .00025 inch). You can enter values from –1000 (minus one em) to 10000 (plus 10 ems) in the Kerning and Tracking fields.

**Manual Kerning** To adjust spacing between a pair of characters, move the text insertion point between the characters and apply manual kerning (see Figure 4-8). Use any of the following techniques.

- ▶ Enter a value in the Kerning field of the Character panel or Control panel. If the kerning field already contains a value entered by one of the automatic kerning methods (see below), you can replace the value by typing over it, or add to or subtract from it (by typing a “+” or “-” between the value and the amount you want to add or subtract).

**FIGURE 4-8**  
**Kerning Text**

*Enter a value in the Kerning field, or choose a value from the associated pop-up menu, or click the arrows, or press a kerning keyboard shortcut.*



- Click the arrow buttons attached to the Kerning field. Click the up button to increase the kerning amount by the value you entered in the Kerning field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box, or click the down button to decrease kerning by the same amount.
- Press a keyboard shortcut (see Table 4-1).

To remove all kerning and tracking from the selected text, press Command-Option-Q/Ctrl-Alt-Q (this sets tracking to zero and sets the kerning method to Metrics).

You can't apply pair kerning when you have a range of text selected—if you try, InDesign displays an error message. When you want to apply a kerning value to a range of text, use Tracking.

## Automatic Kerning

InDesign offers two automatic kerning methods: pair kerning based on kerning pairs found in the font itself (choose Metrics from the Kerning pop-up menu), and kerning based on the outlines of the characters (choose Optical). To see the difference between the two methods take a look at Figure 4-9.

- **Metrics.** When you turn on the Metrics automatic kerning method, InDesign reads the kerning pairs built into the font by the font's designer (or publisher). These kerning pairs cover—or attempt to cover—the most common letter combinations (in English, anyway), and there are usually about 128 pairs defined in a typical font.

You'd think that using the kerning pairs defined in the font would be the perfect way to apply automatic kerning to your text. Who, after all, knows the spacing peculiarities of a given font

**TABLE 4-1**  
**Kerning Keyboard**  
**Shortcuts**

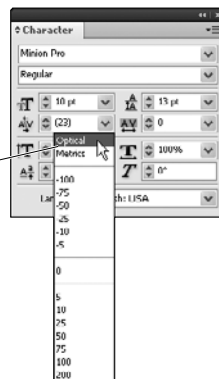
To change kerning by:	Press:
+20/1,000 em*	Option-Right arrow/ Alt-Right arrow
-20/1,000 em*	Option-Left arrow/Alt-Left arrow
+100/1,000 em**	Command-Option-Right arrow/ Ctrl-Alt-Right arrow
-100/1,000 em**	Command-Option-Left arrow/ Ctrl-Alt-Left arrow
Reset Kerning	Command-Option-Q/ Ctrl-Alt-Q

\* This is the default value in the Kerning field of the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box.

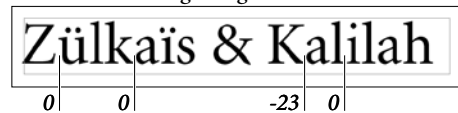
\*\* Or five times the default kerning amount.

**FIGURE 4-9**  
**Automatic**  
**Kerning Methods**

*Choose Optical or  
Metrics from the  
Kerning pop-up menu.*



*Automatic kerning using the Metric method.*



*Automatic kerning using the Optical method.*



better than its designer? Would that this were true! In reality, very few fonts contain well-thought-out kerning pairs (often, pair kerning tables are simply *copied* from one font to another), and the number of kerning pairs defined per font is inadequate (a really well-kerned font might contain several *thousand* pairs, tweaked specifically for the characters in that typeface).

We really need a better method—a method that can adjust the spacing between *every* character pair, while taking into account the peculiarities of the character shapes for a particular font. We also need a kerning method that can automatically adjust the spacing between characters of different fonts. With InDesign's Optical kerning method, we get both.

- **Optical.** The Optical kerning method considers the composed shapes of the characters and applies kerning to even out spacing differences between characters.

In general, the kerning applied by InDesign when you use the Optical kerning method looks looser than that applied by the Metrics kerning method. That's okay—once you've accomplished even spacing, you can always track the text to tighten or loosen its overall appearance. Because tracking applies the same kerning value to all of the text in the selection, in addition to any pair kerning, the even spacing applied by the Optical kerning method is maintained.

**Viewing Automatic Kerning Amounts.** As you move your cursor through the text, you'll be able to see the kerning values applied to the text in the Kerning field of the Character panel or Control panel. Kerning values specified by Optical kerning or Metrics kerning are displayed surrounded by parentheses; manual kerning values you've entered are not (see Figure 4-10).

**FIGURE 4-10**  
**How You Can Tell It's Automatic Kerning**



**Changing Word Spacing.** It's not entirely true that you can't apply kerning when more than one character is selected. You can select a range of text and select Metrics, Optical, or 0 (zero) from the pop-up menu attached to the Kerning field.

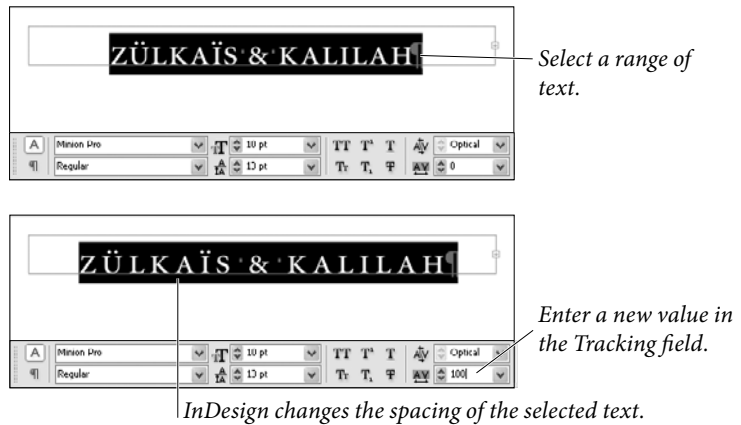
If you want to increase the spacing between words but don't want to change the letterspacing of a range of text, press Command-Option-\ or Ctrl-Alt-\ (backslash) to add the base kerning increment (as defined by the value in the Kerning field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box) after each space character in the range. Hold down Shift as you press this shortcut, and InDesign adds kerning by five times the base kerning amount. To decrease word spacing, press Command-Option-Delete/Ctrl-Alt-Backspace (add the Shift key to the shortcuts to multiply the effect by five).

This keystroke works simply by changing the kerning after each space character. You can always go back and change the kerning, or use Find/Change to remove it.

## Tracking

Tracking, in InDesign, applies the same kerning value to every character in a selected range of text (see Figure 4-11). When you change the tracking of some text, InDesign applies the tracking in addition

**FIGURE 4-11**  
Tracking



to any kerning values applied to the text (regardless of the method—manual or automatic—used to enter the pair kerning). Note that this is the same as the definition of tracking used by QuarkXPress, and is different from the definition used by PageMaker. In PageMaker, tracking also applies kerning, but the amount varies depending on the point size of the selected text and the tracking table in use. In PageMaker, InDesign’s tracking would be called “range kerning.”

Just as you cannot apply kerning using the Kerning field when you have multiple characters selected, you can’t change the Tracking field when the text insertion point is between two characters—you have to have one or more characters selected. (Actually, you *can* change it, but it doesn’t do anything.)

Note that the default keyboard shortcuts for tracking are exactly the same as those for kerning; which one you get depends on whether or not you have a range of text selected.

**Tracking Tips.** The following are a few of our favorite tracking tips.

- ▶ If you’re setting text in all capitals or the small caps style, add 20 or 50 units of tracking to the text. Do not add tracking to the last character of the last word in the text, as that will affect the amount of space after the word, too.
- ▶ Printing white text on a black background often requires a little extra tracking, too. That’s because the negative (black) space makes the white characters seem closer together.
- ▶ Larger type needs to be tracked more tightly (with negative tracking values). Often, the larger the tighter, though there are aesthetic limits to this rule. Advertising headline copy will often be tracked until the characters just “kiss.”

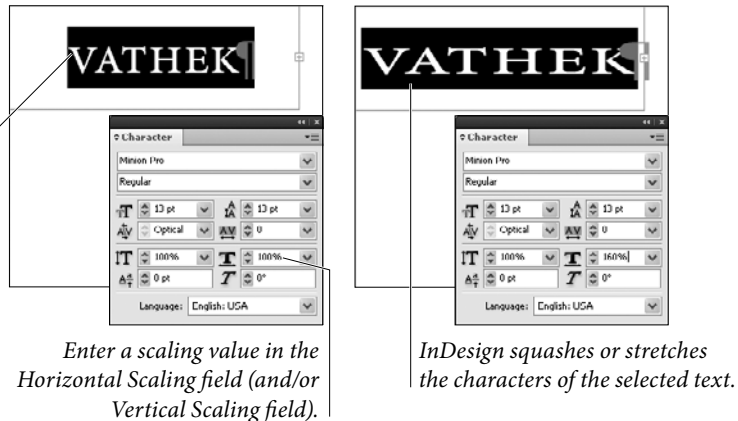
- ▶ A condensed typeface (such as Futura Condensed) can usually do with a little tighter tracking. Sometimes we'll apply a setting as small as -10 to a text block to make it hold together better.
- ▶ When you're setting justified text and you get bad line breaks, or if you have an extra word by itself at the end of a paragraph, you can track the whole paragraph plus or minus one or two units without it being too apparent. Sometimes that's just enough to fix these problems.

### Horizontal and Vertical Scaling

Enter a value in the Horizontal Scaling field or the Vertical Scaling field (or both) to change the size of the selected text (see Figure 4-12). When the values you enter in these fields are not equal, you're creating fake "expanded" or "condensed" type. We say "fake" because true expanded or condensed characters must be drawn by a type designer—when you simply scale the type, the thick and thin strokes of the characters become distorted. Entering values in these fields does not affect the point size of the type.

**FIGURE 4-12**  
Squashing and Stretching Type

*Select some text.*



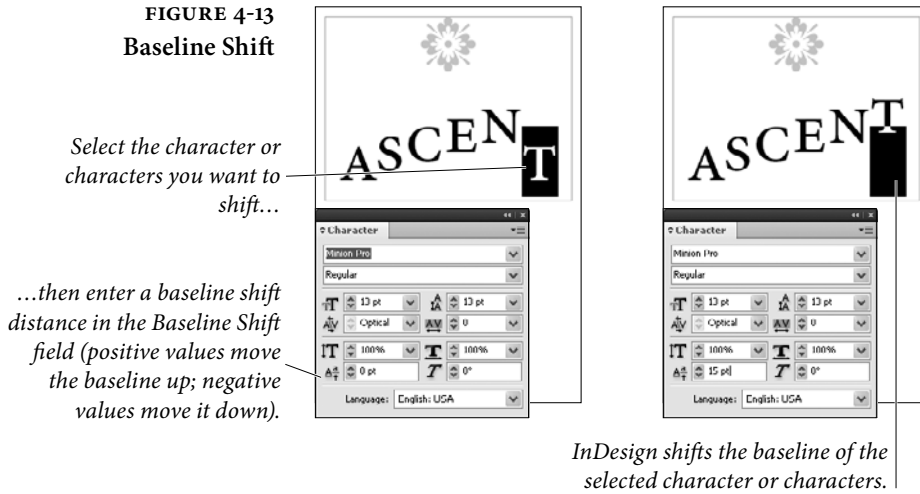
### Baseline Shift

Sometimes, you need to raise the baseline of a character or characters above the baseline of the surrounding text (or lower it below the baseline). In pre-DTP typesetting, we would accomplish this by decreasing or increasing the leading applied to the character. However, that won't work in modern programs—remember, in InDesign the largest leading in the line predominates. Instead, use the Baseline Shift field in the Character panel or Control panel (see Figure 4-13).

Enter an amount in the Baseline Shift field to shift the baseline of the selected text by that amount. As you'd expect, positive values move the selected text up from the baseline; negative values move the selected text down from the baseline.



**FIGURE 4-13**  
**Baseline Shift**



While it's tempting to use Baseline Shift to adjust numbers in formulae, registered trademark symbols, and so on, it's better to use the Superscript or Subscript features.

**Baseline Shift Keyboard Shortcuts.** To apply baseline shift using your keyboard, select some text and press Option-Shift-Up arrow/Alt-Shift-Up arrow to move the baseline of the text up two points—or whatever value you've entered in the Baseline Shift field of the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box, or Option-Shift-Down arrow/Alt-Shift-Down arrow to shift it down by the same distance.

To shift the baseline of the selected text *up* by a distance equal to five times the value you entered in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box, press Command-Option-Shift-Up arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-Up arrow. To shift the baseline down by the same amount, press Command-Option-Shift-Down arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-Down arrow.

## Skewing

When you apply skewing to a range of characters, InDesign slants the vertical axis of the type by the angle you enter here (see Figure 4-14). You can enter from –85 degrees to 85 degrees. Positive skew values slant the type to the right; negative values slant it to the left.

This might be useful as a special text effect, but you shouldn't count on it to provide an “italic” version of a font family that lacks a true italic type style. Why? Because there's more to an italic font than simple slanting of the characters (see Figure 4-15).

## Language

The language you choose for a range of text determines the dictionary InDesign uses to hyphenate and check the spelling of the text (see Figure 4-16). Because language is a character-level attribute, you

**FIGURE 4-14**  
Skewing Text

Select some text.



Enter a value  
in the Skew field.



InDesign skews the characters  
of the selected text.

**FIGURE 4-15**  
Real and Fake  
Italic Characters

Note the differences in  
character shapes.

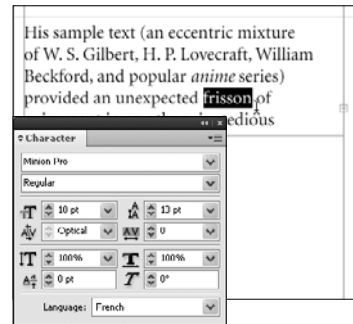
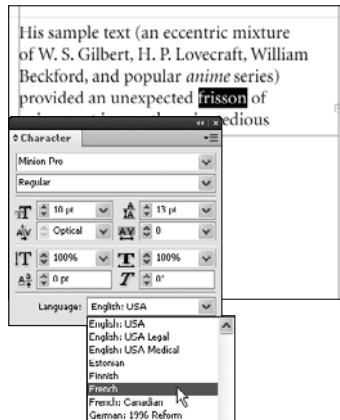


Real: Minion Pro Italic

Fake: Minion Pro  
Regular with 10 degree  
skewing.

**FIGURE 4-16**  
Assigning a Language

Select a word or phrase, then  
select a language from the  
Language pop-up menu.



InDesign will use the language  
you selected when composing text  
or checking spelling.

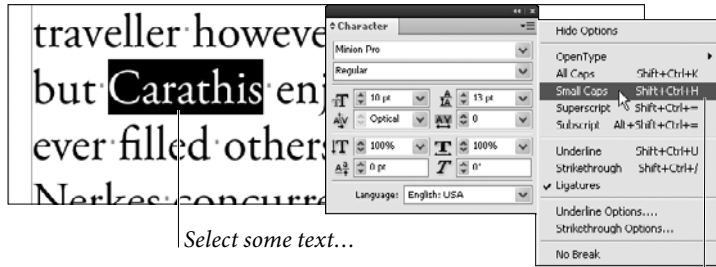
can apply a specific language to individual words—which means you can tell InDesign to stop flagging “frisson” or “gemütlichkeit” as misspelled words, if you want. The only languages that show up in the Language pop-up menu in the Character panel or Control panel are those for which you have a dictionary installed. If the language you’re looking for isn’t in this list, then you can use the InDesign installer to install that dictionary for you.

### Case Options

You can change the case of selected characters to All Caps or Small Caps by choosing All Caps or Small Caps from the Character panel menu (see Figure 4-17). InDesign does not replace the characters

**FIGURE 4-17**  
All Caps and  
Small Caps

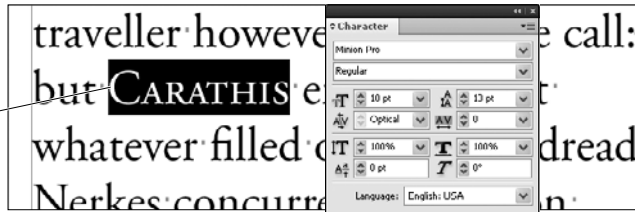
*These two options work the same way; we'll demonstrate small caps.*



*Select some text...*

*...then choose Small Caps from the Character panel or Control panel menu*

*If you're using an OpenType font (as in this example), InDesign displays the small caps version of the selected characters (if the OpenType font contains small caps alternate characters).*



*If you're using a PostScript Type 1 or TrueType font, InDesign displays scaled, capitalized versions of the selected characters.*

*Adobe Garamond Pro (OpenType)*  
THESE ARE TRUE SMALL CAPS  
*Adobe Garamond (PostScript Type 1)*  
THESE ARE NOT TRUE SMALL CAPS

*If you're using a PostScript Type 1 font, don't use the Small Caps character formatting option; instead, change the font of the text to an "expert set."*

themselves; it simply changes the way they look and print. To InDesign's spelling checker or Find and Change features, the text is exactly as it was entered—not the way it appears on your screen.

When you choose Small Caps from the Character panel menu (or press Command-Shift-H/Ctrl-Shift-H), InDesign examines the font used to format the selected text. If the font is an OpenType font, and if the font contains a set of true small caps characters, InDesign uses true small caps. InDesign is also smart enough to do this if you have a non-OpenType font that has an "Expert" version. If the font is not an OpenType font, doesn't have an Expert font available, or doesn't contain small caps characters, InDesign scales regular uppercase characters down to 70 percent (or whatever value you entered in the Small Cap field of the Type pane of the Preferences dialog box, as described in Chapter 1, "Workspace").

### Changing Case

In addition to being able to temporarily change the case of characters using the case options, you can have InDesign change the case of the characters by typing new characters for you using the Change Case submenu (which you'll find on the Type menu and on the context menu when text is selected).

To change the case of selected characters, choose an option: Uppercase, Lowercase, Title Case, or Sentence Case. Uppercase and Lowercase are self-explanatory. Sentence Case capitalizes the first letter of each sentence. Title Case is very simpleminded: it capitalizes the first character of each word in the selection, even if the word is “the,” “and,” or another preposition or article (see Figure 4-18).

**FIGURE 4-18**  
Changing Case

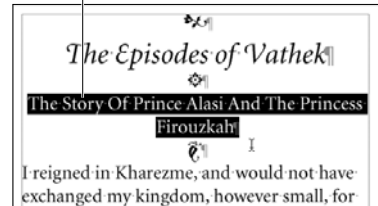
Select some text.

Choose a case conversion option from the Change Case submenu (on the Type menu or the context menu).



*InDesign's Title Case command capitalizes the first character of each word (you'll have to fix articles and prepositions yourself).*

*InDesign converts the case of the selected text. This conversion, unlike the All Caps and Small Caps formatting options, actually replaces the characters in the text.*



## Underline

When you choose Underline from the Character panel menu, click the Underline button in the Control panel, or press Command-Shift-U/Ctrl-Shift-U, InDesign applies an underline to the selected text (see Figure 4-19).

To customize the underline, select Underline Options from the Character panel menu or the Control panel menu to display the Underline Options dialog box, where you'll find controls for setting the thickness, offset, color, and stroke style of the underscore. You can't save these settings as a style or preset, but you can build them into the definition of a character style.

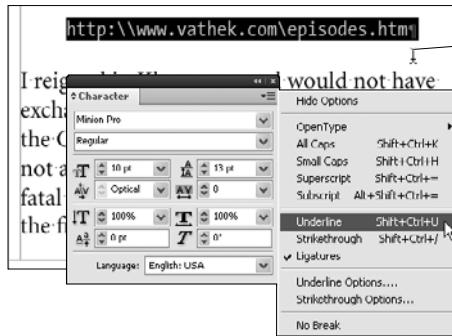
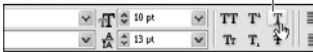
**Breaking at Spaces.** InDesign's underline also includes any spaces in the selection. Some designs require that underlines break at spaces in the text. You could laboriously select each space and turn off the underline attribute, but why not use Find/Change to do the work for you? Find a space in the selection with the Underline attribute, then replace it with a space with Underline turned off.

**FIGURE 4-19**  
**Underline**



By default, stroke weights are based on the size of the text.

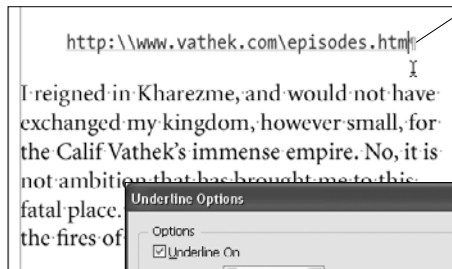
Here's a quick way to display the Underline Options dialog box: hold down Option/Alt as you click the Underline button on the Control panel.



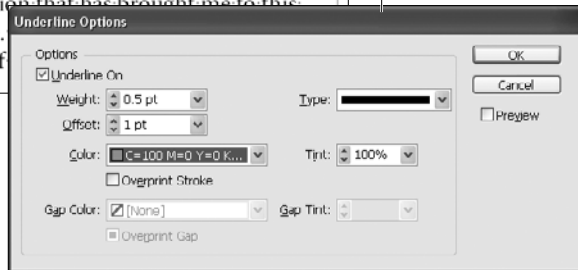
Select the text you want to underline.

Choose Underline from the Character panel menu.

InDesign applies an underline.



Use the Underline Options dialog box to specify the appearance of the underline.



**Breaking Underlines at Descenders.** We said that there was no way to break underlines at descenders—but there is an inelegant workaround: apply a white stroke to the characters. The stroke will overlap the underline. You can use Find/Change to search for characters with descenders (such as the “j” or the “y”) and use the Format button in the Change To area to give them a stroke.

**Highlighting Text.** Want to make some text look as if it's been highlighted with a felt “highlight” marker? You can simulate the effect using a custom underline (see Figure 4-20). Make your underline larger than the text it's supposed to cover and apply a negative offset so that it moves up to cover the text. Be sure to change the color of the underscore to yellow or pink or something that will contrast with the text its highlighting. Note that the color actually falls behind the text, but the effect will be as though the highlight was drawn over it.

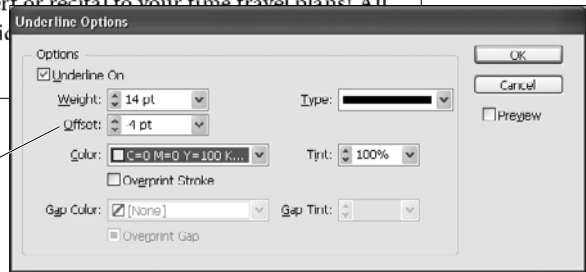
You can also create interesting highlight effects by mixing a custom underline with a custom strikethrough. For instance, you could make a line appear above and below some text, sort of like putting the text in a stripe.

**FIGURE 4-20**  
Creating a  
“Highlight” Effect

*Highlight effect (imagine that it's bright yellow).*

*Positive offset values move the underline rule down from the text baseline; negative offset values move it up.*

As a valued TimeTravelTickets customer, we thought you'd like to be the first to know that we're having a massive End-of-Year sale! Here's your chance to add a special concert or recital to your time travel plans! All TimeTravelTickets price!



## Strikethrough

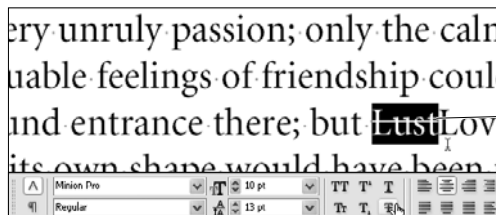
When you choose Strikethrough from the Character panel menu (or click the Strikethrough button in the Control panel or press Command-Shift-?/Ctrl-Shift-?), InDesign applies the strikethrough text effect to the selected text (see Figure 4-21). To remove the Strikethrough text effect, select the feature or press the keystroke again.

The strikethrough style isn't particularly consistent; it changes its thickness and distance from the baseline depending on the font. However, you can control the strikethrough style by selecting Strikethrough Options from the Character or Control panel menu. The options here are very similar to those in the Underline Options dialog box: You can adjust the thickness, color, offset (from the baseline), and style of the line. If you're applying a colored strikethrough

**FIGURE 4-21**  
Strikethrough



*By default, the stroke weight of the Strikethrough effect varies based on the size of the text.*

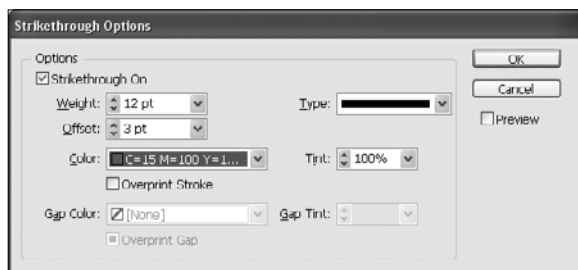


*Select some text...*

*...then choose Strikethrough from the Character panel menu or Option/Alt-click the Strikethrough button on the Control panel.*

*You can use the Strikethrough Options dialog box to specify the appearance and position of the strikethrough rule.*

*To display the Strikethrough Options dialog box, hold down Option/Alt as you click the Strikethrough button in the Control panel, or choose Strikethrough Options from the Control panel menu.*



on top of black text, you may want to set it to overprint so that it won't knock out a fine white line—which would be difficult to register on press. If so, make sure you like the result by turning on Overprint Preview (from the View menu).

**Ligatures** Some character combinations are just trouble—from a typesetting standpoint, at least. In particular, when you combine the lowercase “f” character with “i,” “l,” or “l,” the tops of the characters run into each other. To compensate for this, type designers usually provide ligatures—special characters in the font that are “tied” (“ligature” means “tie”) together.

When you choose Ligatures from the Character panel's menu, InDesign replaces some of the character combinations in the selected range of text with the corresponding ligatures (see Figure 4-22).

If the font you've selected is not an OpenType font, InDesign replaces only the “fi” and “fl” character combinations. In Windows, InDesign uses these ligature characters if they're available in the font (and they are, for most PostScript Type 1 fonts), even though they are not part of the Windows character set—that is, there is usually no way to type them. If the font you've selected is an OpenType font, InDesign makes the ligature substitutions are suggested by the font.

OpenType fonts can also feature other sorts of ligatures—for more on this topic, see “OpenType Fonts,” later in this chapter.

### Superscript and Subscript

While you can always create superscript or subscript characters (for use in fractions or exponential notation) by changing the point size and baseline shift of selected characters, InDesign provides a shortcut: the Superscript and Subscript text effects (see Figure 4-23).

When you select Superscript or Subscript from the Character panel menu, InDesign scales the selected text and shifts its baseline. (You can also press Command-Shift-=/Ctrl-Shift-= for superscript or

**FIGURE 4-22**  
**Ligatures**

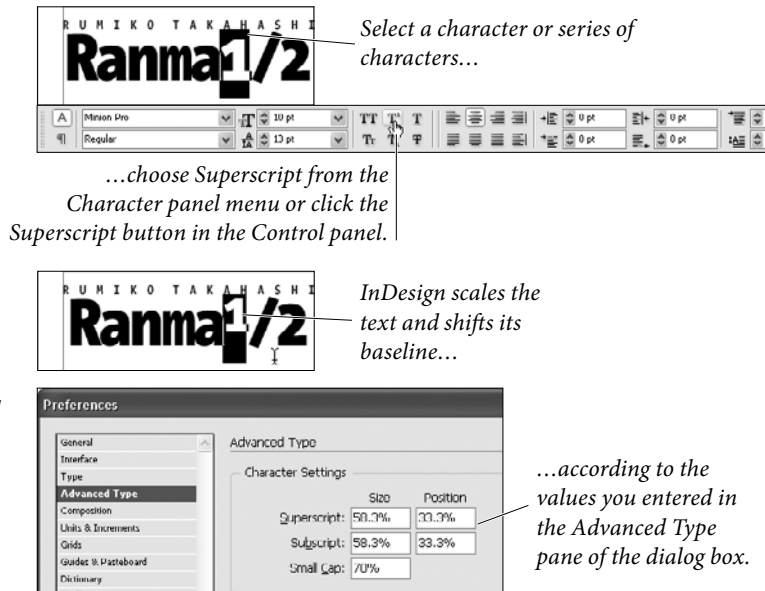
Select some text and then choose Ligatures from the Character panel menu.



If you're using an OpenType font, InDesign uses additional ligatures defined in the font. In this example, InDesign applies the “ffi” and “ffl” ligatures.

*Ligatures off*  
 Adobe Garamond Pro (OpenType)  
 file difficult reflect affliction  
 Adobe Garamond (PostScript Type 1)  
 file difficult reflect affliction  
*Ligatures on*  
 Adobe Garamond Pro (OpenType)  
 file difficult reflect affliction  
 Adobe Garamond (PostScript Type 1)  
 file difficult reflect affliction

**FIGURE 4-23**  
Superscript and  
Subscript



*Tip: To display the Advanced Type pane of the Preferences dialog box, hold down Option/Alt and click the Superscript or Subscript button in the Control panel.*

Command-Option-Shift-=/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-= for subscript.) InDesign calculates the scaling and baseline shift by multiplying the current text size and leading by the values you've set in the Size fields in the Advanced Type pane of the Preferences dialog box (see "Text Preferences" in Chapter 1, "Workspace").

If you are using an OpenType font that has true Superscript and Subscript characters, use Superscript/Superior and Subscript/Inferior options in the OpenType submenu (see below).

### No Break

This one is really easy to explain: To prevent a range of text from breaking across lines, select the text and turn on the No Break option in the Character or Control panel menu.

## OpenType Fonts

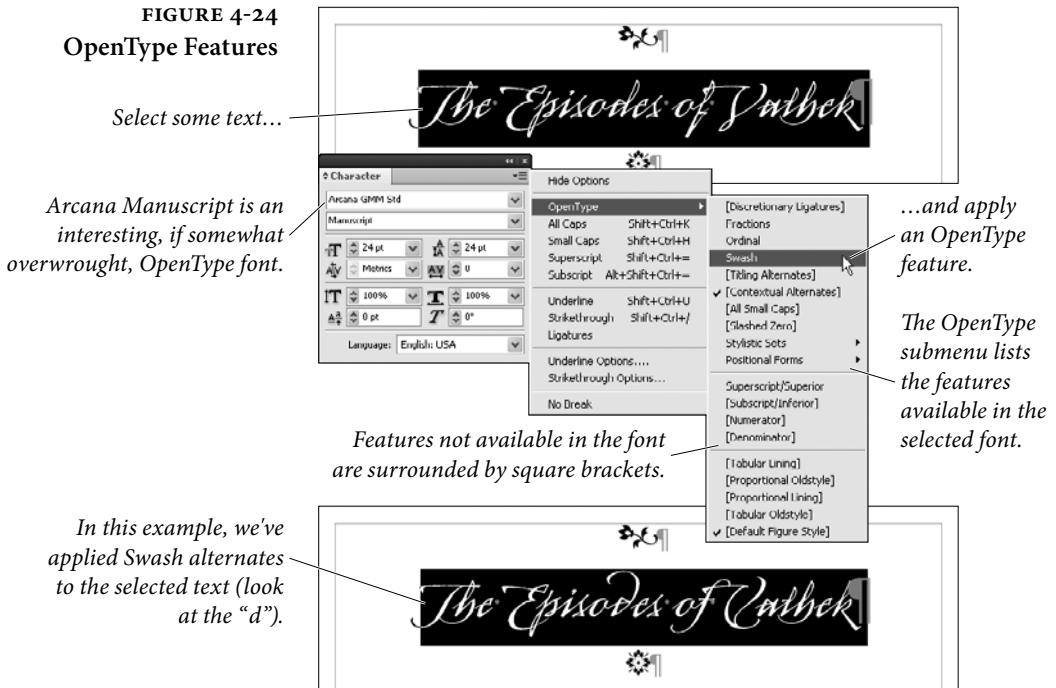
We've mentioned OpenType fonts a few times in the chapter so far; however, we should probably take a moment to discuss them. The OpenType font specification was created jointly by Microsoft and Adobe as a way to represent a font with only a single file on both Macintosh and Windows (so you can move the font cross-platform). The characters are encoded using the international standard Unicode, so each font can have hundreds, or even thousands of different characters—even the very large character sets in non-Roman languages such as Japanese.



InDesign can perform special tricks with OpenType fonts, such as replacing characters with swashes, or adding ligatures for character pairs such as *ct* and *ffi*.

Most of the special OpenType typesetting features in InDesign are hidden in the OpenType submenu in the Character or Control panel's menu (see Figure 4-24). If a font doesn't support one of these features, it appears in the menu within square brackets ("*[Swash]*").

**FIGURE 4-24**  
OpenType Features



### Alternate Characters

The OpenType features work by replacing one or more glyphs with another single glyph. “fi” and “fl” ligatures that we discussed earlier are a great example of this, but they’re only the beginning.

**Discretionary Ligatures.** Font designers love making ligatures, but they recognize that users won’t want to use more esoteric ligatures (such as “*ct*” or “*ſt*”) in everyday text. If you select some text and turn on the Discretionary Ligatures feature, InDesign uses these lesser-known ligatures (if they’re available in the font). We usually turn this off except when we’re trying to make something look “old fashioned,” or when using a script typeface (such as Bickham Script Pro).

**Fractions.** Changing fake fractions (such as  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) to real fractions ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ) has long been a thorn in the side of anyone laying out cookbooks

or construction manuals. Fortunately, you can now just turn on the Fractions feature and anything that looks like a fraction will convert to the proper character automatically.

In some OpenType typefaces, only very basic fractions such as  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{1}{4}$  are converted. Other typefaces support those plus some extended fractions, such as  $\frac{2}{3}$  and  $\frac{5}{8}$ . Some fonts support arbitrary fractions such as  $\frac{355}{113}$ . It depends on the design of the font.

Don't turn on the Fractions feature for all your text because InDesign often assumes that *all* your numbers and much of your punctuation are part of fractions and turns them into numerators.

**Ordinal.** “First,” “second,” and “third” are all examples of ordinal numbers. InDesign can automatically set the “st,” “nd,” and “rd” (or the “o” and “a” in Spanish) to superscript when you turn Ordinal on in the OpenType submenu. “3rd,” for example, becomes “3<sup>rd</sup>”.

**Swash.** When you need to give a character a little more flair, select it and turn on the Swash feature. Swashes are typically used at the beginning or ending of words or sentences. You can see if a particular OpenType font has any swash characters by opening the Glyph panel and looking for Swash in the Show pop-up menu; some fonts (such as Adobe Caslon Pro) have swashes in their italic styles only.

**Titling Alternates.** Some OpenType fonts have special “titling” characters that are designed for all-uppercase type set at large sizes.

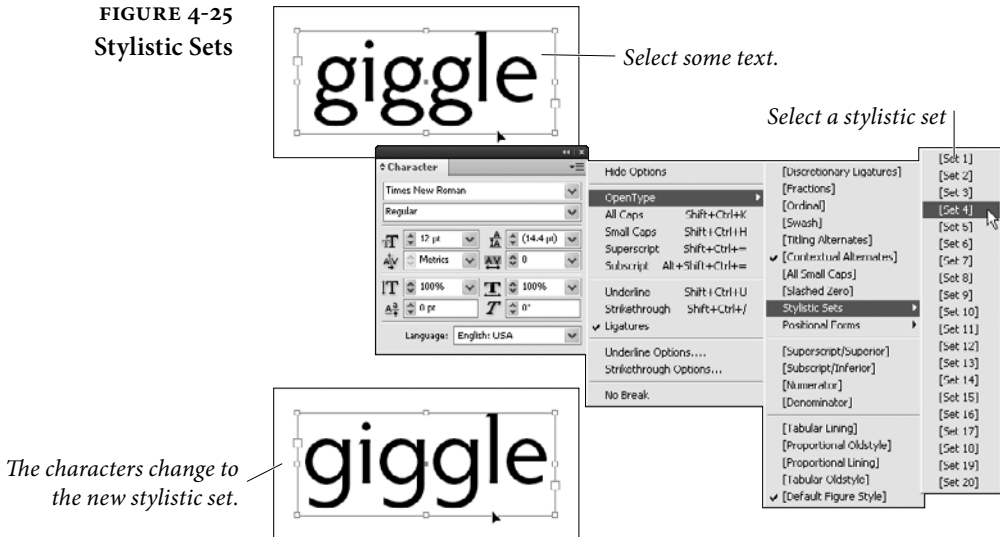
**Contextual Alternates.** Some OpenType fonts—mostly the script faces—have contextual ligatures and connecting alternates, which are very similar to ligatures. When you turn on Contextual Alternates, the result looks more like handwriting because the alternate characters connect to each other.

**All Small Caps.** When you turn on the Small Caps feature (which we described in “Case Options,” earlier), InDesign leaves uppercase characters alone. All Small Caps, however, forces uppercase characters to appear as lowercase small caps. This is useful when formatting acronyms such as DOS, NASA, or IBM.

**Slashed Zero.** The problem with the number 0 is that it looks far too much like the letter O in some fonts. Some folks like to differentiate the two by using a slashed zero (0) in place of a zero. When you apply the Slashed Zero OpenType style, every zero appears with a slash automatically.

**Stylistic Sets.** A few fonts go beyond offering a swash or contextual alternate here and there, and provide whole sets of alternates that each give a slightly different feel to the face as a whole. For example, you might like Thomas Phinney’s Hypatia Sans Pro, but realize that you don’t like the font’s double-loop “g”. No problem: Turn on stylistic set number four and the character changes throughout the selection (see Figure 4-25). You can enable more than one stylistic set at a time; select it once to turn it on, select it again to turn it off.

**FIGURE 4-25**  
Stylistic Sets



**Positional Forms.** In some languages, characters change depending on their position in a word—for example, in Hebrew, the “mem” character changes from מ to ם when it’s at the end of a word.

InDesign uses the General positional form—which uses the normal glyph. If you choose Automatic Form, InDesign changes the character depending on its position in the word. You can override the form by choosing Initial, Medial, Final, or Isolated Form. It’s hard to find a font in which this feature does much of anything.

### **Raised and Lowered Characters**

Typesetting a treatise on Einstein’s theory of relativity? If so, you’ll be mighty happy about InDesign’s ability to use true superscripts and subscripts instead of the faked scaled versions that you get with the Superscript and Subscript features in the Character panel’s menu. You have four choices in the OpenType submenu (each one is mutually exclusive of the others):

- ▶ Superscript/Superior
- ▶ Subscript/Inferior

- Numerator
- Denominator

However, note that most OpenType fonts only have a small set of characters designed to be superscript or subscript, so you can't set any and all characters you want in these styles. For example, if you set the word "turkey" to Superscript/Superior style, only every other character changes. In some cases you'll get the same result when you choose Denominator or Subscript/Inferior.

## Formatting Numerals

We like "old style" numerals (you know, the kind with descenders: 1234567890) better than full-height "lining figures" (1234567890), and we've always gotten them by changing the font of the characters to an "expert" version of whatever font we were using (if one was available). So we were very happy to see that there are four different ways InDesign can format numerals: Proportional Oldstyle, Tabular Oldstyle, Proportional Lining, Tabular Lining (see Figure 4-26).

Tabular Lining works well for financial tables (such as those found in an annual report), because numbers have equal widths and align from one line to the next. If you choose Tabular Oldstyle from the OpenType submenu, the numerals line up, but InDesign uses old style characters. Proportional Lining numerals are all the same height, but vary in width. David prefers this style for everything other than tables, especially when interspersing numbers and upper-case characters. Ole would rather use Proportional Oldstyle, which uses old style figures of varying widths.

**FIGURE 4-26**  
Old Style

12345  
67890

*Tabular  
Lining*

12345  
67890

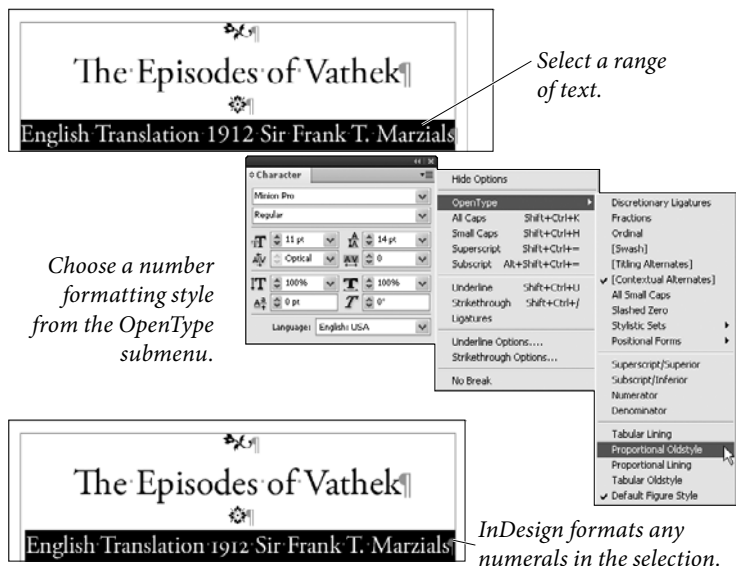
*Tabular  
Oldstyle*

12345  
67890

*Proportional  
Oldstyle*

12345  
67890

*Proportional  
Lining*



The last OpenType numeral formatting option is Default Figure Style, which applies the figure style defined as the default by the type designer (so the effect varies from font to font).

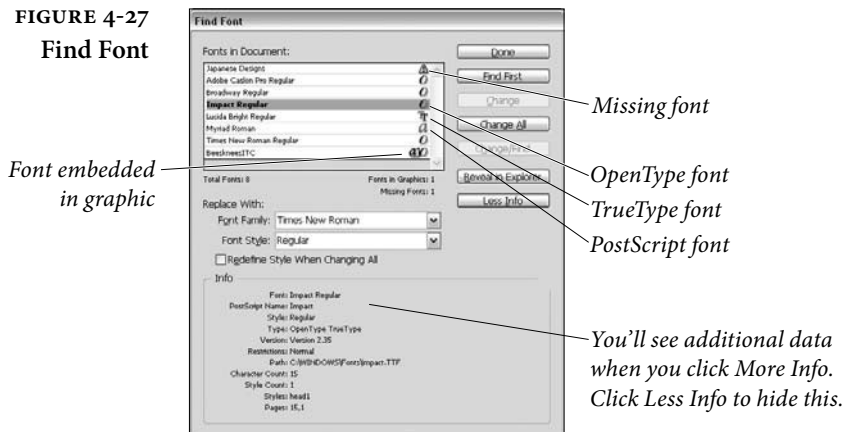
## Find Font

The Find Font dialog box (choose Find Font from the Type menu) displays a list of every font that appears somewhere on a document page—including on master pages and in linked PDF or EPS graphics (see Figure 4-27). It does not list fonts that are defined in paragraph or character styles that aren't actually applied to text. If you click the More Info button, the dialog box displays more information about each font you select, including the pages where the font is used, which styles include this font, how many text characters appear in this font, and the version of the font. (There is often more than one version of the same font, each with its own number, just like other software.) Note that showing More Info can slow down the Find Font dialog box significantly, so we often leave this closed.

If you're not sure where a font is living on your hard drive, the Find Font dialog comes to the rescue: Not only is the path to the font listed in More Info, but you can click Reveal in Finder (or Reveal in Explorer in Windows) to open the folder that contains the font.

**Replacing Fonts.** It's a good idea to visit Find Font every now and again, and especially before finishing your job. We often find rogue fonts sneaking in to documents when we import or copy and paste text from Word or some other document. For example, as we type this, we checked and found that Times New Roman is in this document

**FIGURE 4-27**  
**Find Font**



for some reason. More Info tells us that it's applied to 36 characters on two different pages. Fortunately, the rest of the Find Font dialog box acts like the Find/Change dialog box, so we can quickly rid ourselves of this aberration.

To replace that incorrectly-styled text, select the font from the list and click Change, Change All, or Change/Find.

If you believe the errant font is actually inside a character or paragraph style definition, then turn on the Redefine Style When Changing All option *before* you click Change All. Otherwise, you'll change the font on your pages, but the font will still be lurking inside the style, just waiting to surprise you again when you least expect it.

By the way, sometimes you'll find that Find Font lists a font as being used in your document but Find Next won't find it, and More Info tells you that there are zero characters that have this font applied to it. This happens when the font is applied only to automatic bullets or numbering (see "Bullets and Numbering," later in this chapter). Find Font will also tell you a font exists when it really doesn't if you have an empty frame that used to contain text in that font—just another good reason not to leave empty frames lying around.

---

## Filling and Stroking Characters

InDesign can fill or stroke text as it can any other path. Once you've selected text, you can set the fill color, stroke color, stroke weight, stroke type, and stroke alignment (see Figure 4-28). The Control panel includes Fill and Stroke boxes for easy color swatch selection.

You can apply gradients to the fill and stroke of the type without converting the type to outlines. However, while gradients are easy to apply, it's not always easy to get the effect you're looking for, because gradients are based on the bounds of the text frame. If you want to change the gradient, select the text and drag the Gradient Swatch tool over it. (See Chapter 5, "Drawing," for more on gradients.)

---

## Paragraph Formatting

What makes a paragraph a paragraph? InDesign's definition is simple—a paragraph is any string of characters that ends with a carriage return. When you apply paragraph formatting, the formatting applies to all of the characters in the paragraph. Paragraph alignment, indents, tabs, spacing, and hyphenation settings are all examples of paragraph formatting.

**FIGURE 4-28**  
Character Fill  
and Stroke

Select an unlinked text frame using the Selection tool, then click the *Formatting Affects Text* button.

You can also click the *Formatting Affects Text* button in the Swatches panel.

Format the text using any of the fill and stroke formatting tools. In this example, we used the Swatches panel to apply a tint to the fill and stroke of the text, and then used the Stroke panel to set the stroke weight.

You can control the stroke alignment of the stroke. This stroke is center aligned; the one to the right is aligned to the outside of the stroke.



You can also select characters using the Type tool, then apply a fill and/or stroke to the text using the same controls you use to apply a fill or stroke to any path.



Note that the fill retains the shape of the character as you increase stroke weight. This works because InDesign strokes the characters and then fills them.

You don't have to select all of the text in a paragraph to apply paragraph formatting—all you need to do is click the Type tool in the paragraph. To select more than one paragraph, drag the cursor through the paragraphs you want to format. The selection doesn't have to include all of the text, it only has to *touch* each paragraph.

If what you're trying to do, however, is apply character formatting (such as font or point size) to all of the characters in the paragraph, you should quadruple-click (or triple-click, if you've turned off the Triple Click to Select a Line option in the Type panel of the Preferences dialog box) the paragraph with the Type tool—that way, you'll select all of the characters, including the carriage return character. (Note that you can force a line break without creating a new paragraph—called a “soft return”—by typing Shift-Return/Shift-Enter.)

You can find all of InDesign's paragraph formatting features in the Paragraph panel. To display the Paragraph panel, press Command-Option-T/Ctrl-Alt-T. These features are duplicated in the Control panel—if the Control panel is displaying character formatting, then click the panel's Paragraph Formatting Controls button or press Command-Option-7/Ctrl-Alt-7 to switch to paragraph formatting.

**Alignment**

Click the alignment buttons at the top of the Paragraph panel or in the Control panel to set the alignment of the selected paragraphs (see Figure 4-29).

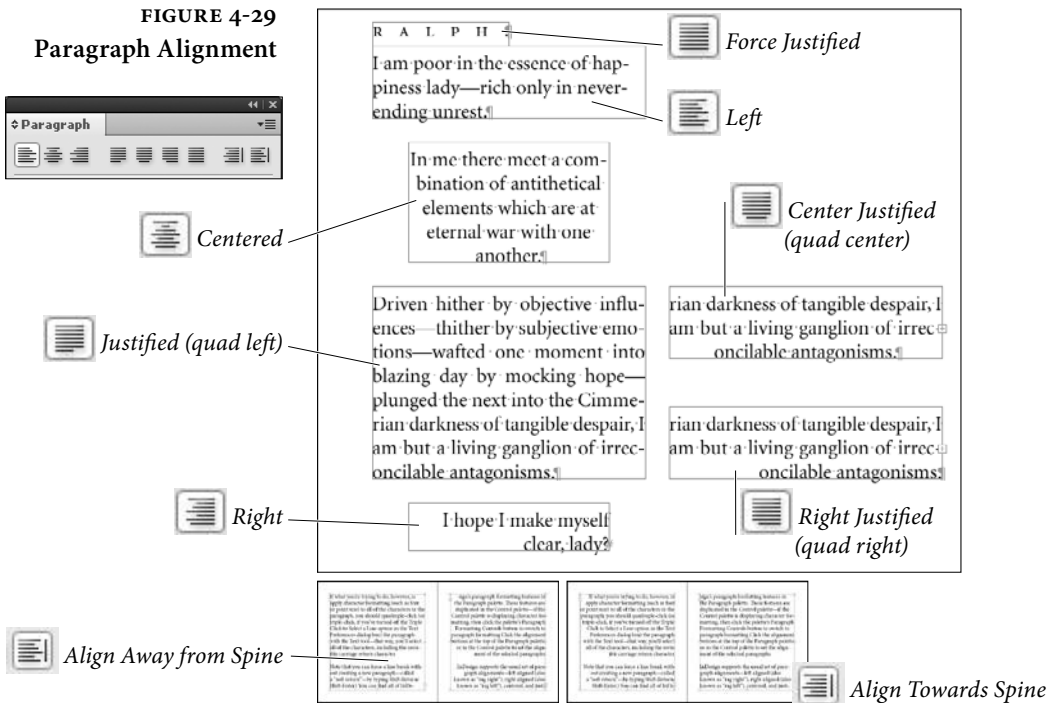
InDesign supports the usual set of paragraph alignments—left aligned (also known as “rag right”), right aligned (also known as “rag left”), centered, and justified, but also adds a couple of variations on the justified alignment you might not be familiar with.

In addition to the standard “justified” alignment, which treats the last line of the paragraph as if it were left aligned, InDesign offers the force justified, right justified, and center justified alignments. These each tell InDesign to treat the last line of the paragraph differently. When you force justify the text, the last line is spread out all the way to the right margin, even if it’s only a single word. In some cases, when the Paragraph Composer is turned on (see “Multi-line Composition,” later in this chapter), turning on force justify actually reflows the paragraph significantly.

Right justified and center justified treat the last line as right aligned and center aligned, respectively. In the old days of typesetting, these alignments were known as “quad right” and “quad center.”

Finally, the Align Towards Spine and Align Away from Spine options. The former aligns the text to the spine and leaves the outside of the text ragged; the latter does the opposite.

**FIGURE 4-29**  
Paragraph Alignment





**Indents** Paragraphs can be indented using the Left Indent and Right Indent fields in the Paragraph or Control panel (see Figure 4-30). You can enter values from zero (0) to 720 picas in these fields, but you can't enter negative numbers to make the edges of the paragraph "hang" outside the edges of the column or text frame.

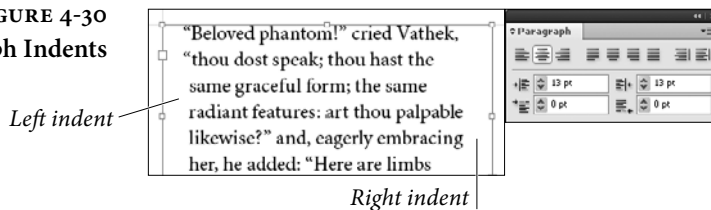
Note that the left and right indents are always added to the text inset, as specified in the Text Frame Options dialog box. If you have a left inset of 6 points and a left indent of 12 points, then the left edge of the paragraph will sit 18 points from the edge of the frame.

There are also two special indents, called First Line Left Indent and Last Line Right Indent. The first applies to the first line of the paragraph alone—the value you enter in the First Line Left Indent field sets the distance between the first line indent and the left indent. The First Line indent may be positive or negative, but cannot be a negative number greater than the left indent (see Figure 4-31). You should *never* create an indent by typing five spaces at the beginning of a paragraph to indent; instead, use First Line indent.

How large your First Line indent should be depends on your design and on the typeface you're working with. Typically, the larger the x-height of the font, the larger first-line indent you should use. Book designers often use a one- or two-em indent, so in an 11-point type, the indent might be 11 or 22 points.

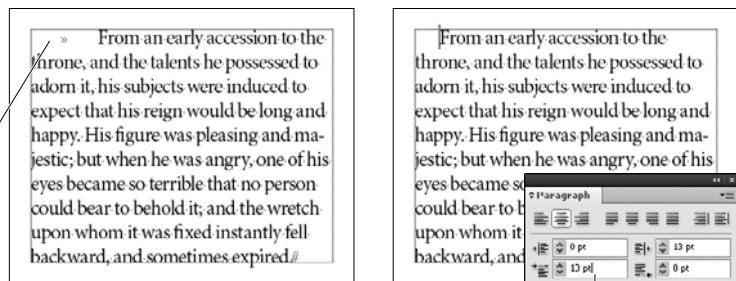
The Last Line Right Indent lets you set the position for the last line of text in a paragraph. The most common use for this is to apply a large Right Indent and then a negative Last Line Right Indent (so that the last line sticks out past the rest of the paragraph, as in many

**FIGURE 4-30**  
**Paragraph Indents**



**FIGURE 4-31**  
**First Line Indent**

*Don't use tab characters to apply a first line indent...*



*...use the First Line Indent field.*

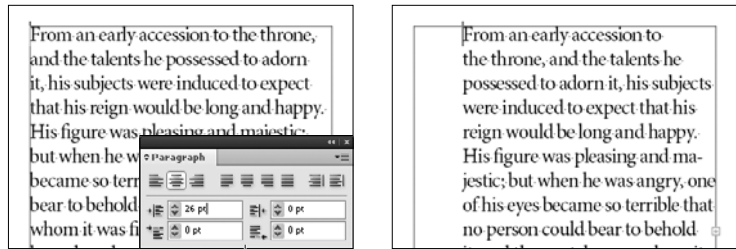
menu designs). Another use might be to set the position of the final line when using Justify All Lines (forced justification).

To change an indent value, select a paragraph and then do one of the following things:

- Display the Paragraph or Control panel, then enter a value in the First Line Left Indent, Left Indent, Right Indent, and/or the Last Line Right Indent fields (see Figure 4-32).
- Display the Tabs panel (press Command-Shift-T/Ctrl-Shift-T), and drag one of the indent icons (see Figure 4-33).

**FIGURE 4-32**  
**Setting an Indent**

*Click the Type tool in the paragraph you want to format.*

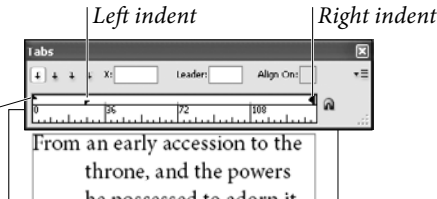


*Enter values in the Left, Right, First, or Last fields.*

*InDesign applies the indents you've specified.*

**FIGURE 4-33**  
**Indents on the Tabs Panel**

*First Line indent*



## Creating a Hanging Indent

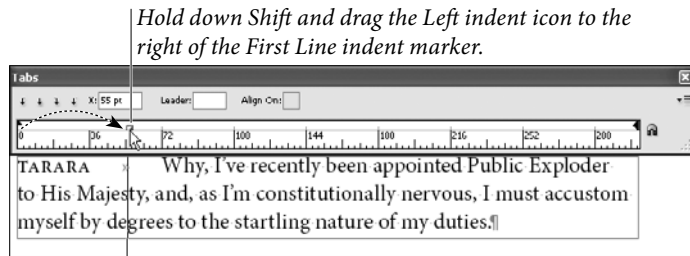
A hanging indent is one in which the first line of a paragraph “sticks out” to the left of the rest of the paragraph—often used in numbered or bulleted lists. Use hanging indents, rather than breaking and indenting each line using carriage returns and tabs—you’ll thank yourself for it later, when you need to edit the text or change the width of the text block.

There are two basic methods for creating a hanging indent. First, you can apply a positive Left Indent and a negative First Line Left Indent with either the Tabs panel (see Figure 4-34) or the Paragraph or Control panel. Either way, there’s no need to set a tab stop because InDesign assumes the left indent is the first tab stop.

Here’s another way to create a hanging indent: Type the text you want to “hang,” followed by a tab character. With the text cursor immediately after the tab character, press Command-\ or Ctrl-\ (backslash). This is the keyboard shortcut for the Indent to Here

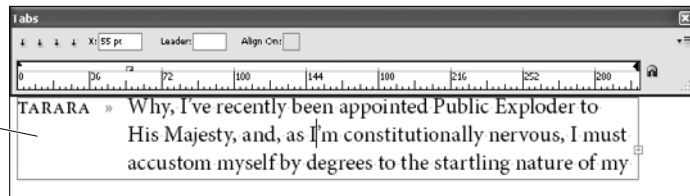
**FIGURE 4-34**  
**Setting a**  
**Hanging Indent**

Click the Type tool in a paragraph, then press Command-Shift-T/ Ctrl-Shift-T to display the Tabs panel.



As you drag, InDesign displays a vertical guide that follows the location of the Left indent icon.

Stop dragging, and InDesign applies a hanging indent to the selected paragraph.



character (you can also get this character from the Other submenu in the Insert Special Character submenu, in either the Type menu or the context menu). This invisible character causes the rest of the lines in a paragraph to indent to this place. If you want to delete it, you can place the cursor after it (since it's invisible and has no width, you might have to use the arrow keys to position it) and then press Delete.

While the Indent to Here character is easy to type, we like using the negative First Line indent trick more because we can use it in a paragraph style.

## Tabs

Tabs come to desktop typesetting from typewriters, by way of word processing (with a stopover along the way at the Linotype machine). They solve a problem that didn't exist in hand-set metal type—namely, how do you position characters at precise locations in a line of type when you can't simply slide them into place with your finger?

There are two methods of controlling the horizontal position of text in a line. First, you can use space characters—word spaces, thin spaces, en spaces, and em spaces. This method places characters at *relative* positions in the line—where they appear depends on the width of the spaces and of the other characters in the line. Tabs, by contrast, provide *absolute* position on the line—a tab stop set at 6 picas will remain at that position, regardless of the content of the line.

Before we go any further, we'd better make sure we're using the same terminology. *Tab stops* are formatting attributes of paragraphs. *Tab characters* are what InDesign enters in a line of text when you press the Tab key. Tab characters push text around in a line; tab stops determine the effect of the tab characters. Each tab stop has

a position (relative to the left edge of the text frame), an alignment (which specifies the composition of the text following a tab character), and, potentially, a leader (a tab leader is a series of repeated characters spanning the distance from beginning of the tab character to the beginning of the following text). Put tab stops and tab characters together, and you get *tabs*, the feature.

**A Little Tab Dogma.** Look. We try to be reasonable. We try not to insist that everyone work the way that we do, or that our way of doing things is necessarily the best way (in fact, we sometimes know it's not). But tabs are different—if you don't do it our way, you'll be causing yourself needless pain. Let's review the rules:

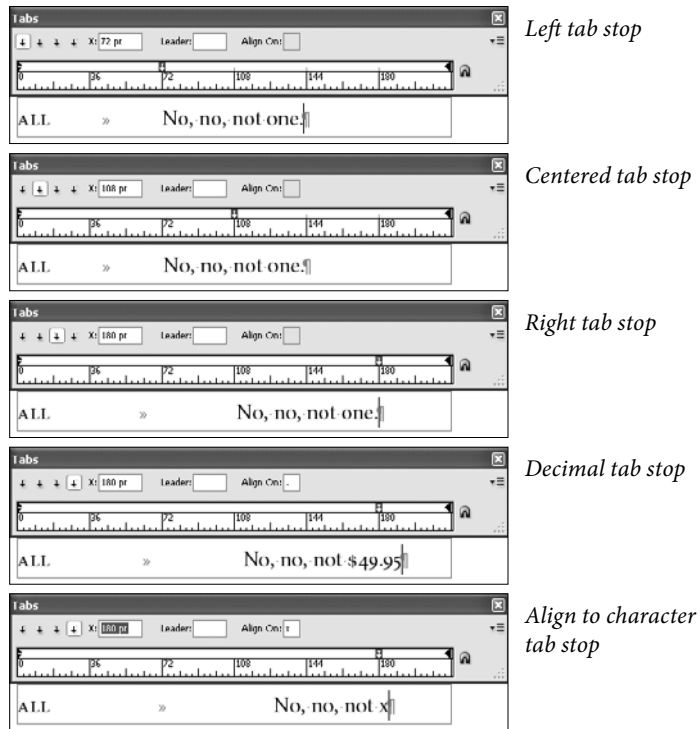
- ▶ Use tabs, not spaces, to move text to a specific position in a line.
- ▶ Use a First Line indent, not a tab, when you want to indent the first line of a paragraph.
- ▶ Do not force lines to break by entering tab characters (or multiple tab characters) at the end of a line! If you do, you'll find tab characters creeping back into the text as editing changes force text recomposition. To break a line without entering a carriage return, use the "soft return" (press Shift-Return/Shift-Enter).
- ▶ Don't use multiple tab characters when you can use a single tab character and an appropriately positioned tab stop. While there are some cases where you'll have to break this rule, putting two or more tab characters in a row should be the exception.

**Types of Tab Stops** InDesign features four types of tab stops (see Figure 4-35).

**Left, Right, and Centered Tab Stops.** InDesign's left, right, and centered tab stops are the same as the basic tab stops you'll find in any word processor.

- ▶ Left tab stops push text following a tab character to a specific horizontal location in a column, and then align the text to the left of the tab stop position.
- ▶ Right tab stops push text to a location and then align the text to the right of the tab stop position.
- ▶ Centered tab stops center a line of text at the point at which you've set the tab stop.

**FIGURE 4-35**  
**Tab Stop Alignment**



**Decimal Tab Stops.** Decimal tab stops push text following a tab character so that any decimal point you’ve entered in the text aligns with the point at which you set the tab stop.

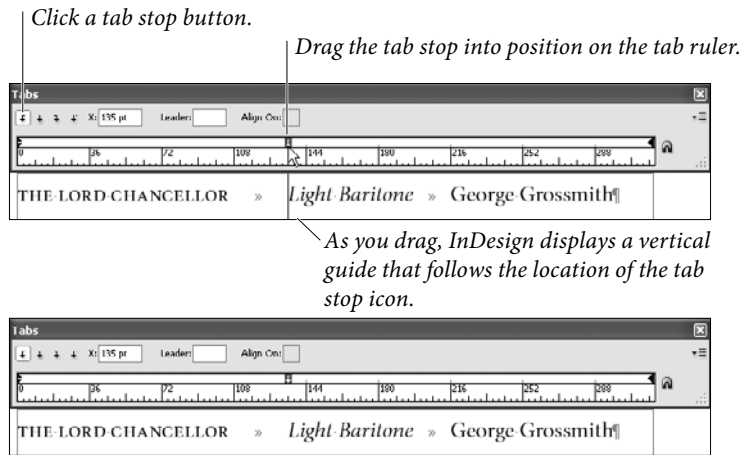
Actually, the Decimal tab stop is an “align to any character you want” tab stop. Type the character you’re trying to align in the Align On field of the Tabs panel. For example, let’s say you have a column of item numbers, some with asterisks. You can make the asterisks hang out to the right by typing an asterisk character in the Align On field. If the Align On character doesn’t appear in the paragraph, InDesign treats the decimal tab stop as a right tab stop.

## Setting Tab Stops

To set a tab stop, follow these steps (see Figure 4-36).

1. If you haven’t already entered tab characters in the text, enter them.
2. Select the paragraph(s) you want to format.
3. Display the Tabs panel (press Command-Shift-T/Ctrl-Shift-T), then click the Magnet button to snap the Tabs panel into position at the top of the text frame (if possible).

**FIGURE 4-36**  
**Setting a Tab Stop**



4. Click in the tab ruler and drag. As you drag, the X field shows you the position of the tab icon (relative to the left edge of the text frame). Then click one of the tab stop alignment buttons to determine the type of the tab stop.

You can also add a tab stop at a specific location on the tab ruler. To do this, enter the position you want in the X field in the Tabs panel and then press Enter. InDesign adds the tab stop.

**Removing Tab Stops.** To remove a tab stop, drag the tab stop icon off the tab ruler. Note that this doesn't remove any tab characters you've typed in your text, though it does make them behave differently (because you've taken away their tab stop).

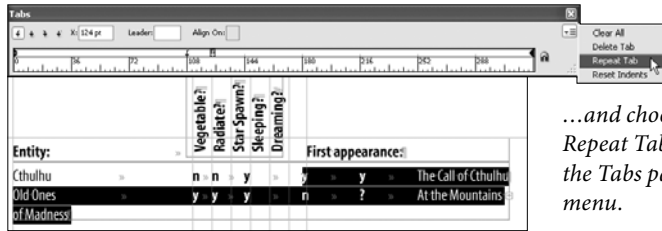
**Editing Tab Stops.** To change a tab stop's position, drag the tab stop on the tab ruler. Alternatively, you can select the tab stop (click on it), then enter a new value in the x field or give it a leader. Don't forget that if you want to move the tab stop by a specific amount, you can add a + or - character after the value that appears in the x field and then type the amount you want to move it ("+14mm").

To change a tab stop's alignment (from left to decimal, for instance), select the tab stop on the tab ruler and then click the tab stop button corresponding to the alignment you want. Or you can Option/Alt-click on the tab stop to cycle through the alignment types.

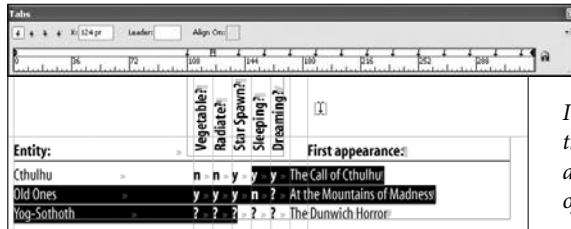
**Repeating Tab Stops.** To create a series of tab stops spaced an equal distance apart, select a tab stop on the tab ruler and choose Repeat Tab from the Tabs panel menu (see Figure 4-37). InDesign repeats the tab across the width of the current column. The distance between

**FIGURE 4-37**  
Repeating a Tab Stop

Select the tab stop icon you want to repeat...



...and choose Repeat Tab from the Tabs panel menu.



InDesign repeats the tab stop across the width of the tab ruler.

the new tab stops is equal to the distance between the tab stop you selected and the previous tab stop (or indent) in the column. InDesign also deletes all the tab stops that were already to the right of the tab stop you clicked (which can be frustrating if you've placed tab stops there and weren't expecting them to disappear).

**Working with Tab Leaders.** A tab leader is a series of repeated characters that fill the area taken up by the tab character (see Figure 4-38). The most common tab leader character is a period—think of all of the “dot” leaders you’ve seen in tables of contents.

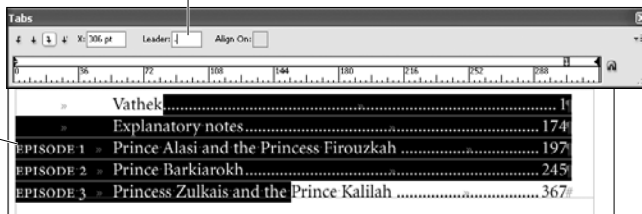
Characters in a tab leader are not spaced in the same fashion as other characters—if they were, the characters in tab leaders on successive lines would not align with each other. That would be ugly. Instead, characters in a tab leader are monospaced—positioned as if on an invisible grid. This means you’ll see different amounts of space between the last character of text preceding a tab leader and the first tab leader. It’s a small price to pay.

**FIGURE 4-38**  
Applying a Tab Leader

Select some text.

Select a tab stop and enter the character or characters you want to use for the tab leader in the Leader field. Press Return/Enter...

...and InDesign applies a tab leader to the selected tab stop.



In InDesign, you can format the characters in a tab leader by selecting the tab character and applying formatting, just as you would any other character. For instance, dotted tab leaders typically look like a bunch of periods. To make them look more like traditional dot leaders, add a space after the period (in the Leader field), then select the tab character and reduce its size slightly.

**Right-aligned Tabs.** Setting a tab stop precisely at the right margin can be a bother; it's an even bigger bother when your art director says, "make that column narrower." Instead of using tab stops, try using a right-aligned tab character, which you can enter by pressing Shift-Tab (or add with the Insert Special Character submenu in the Type menu). The text that follows the right-aligned tab character always aligns with the right margin, even when you change the right indent or the width of the text frame.

The right aligned tab picks up the tab leader settings from the last tab stop in the line.

### **Adding Space Before and After Paragraphs**

When you want to add extra space between paragraphs, don't use carriage returns (not even one). If you do, you're certain to end up with unwanted carriage returns at the tops of text frames when text recomposes due to editing or formatting changes. Instead of typing carriage returns, use the Space Before and Space After fields in the Paragraph or Control panel. When you add space using these controls, InDesign removes the space when the paragraph falls at the top of a text frame (see Figure 4-39). If you need to add space before a paragraph at the top of a text frame, use First Baseline offset (see Chapter 3, "Text").

In addition, adding an exact amount of space is easier when you use the Paragraph or Control panel. Want to add four picas of vertical space above the paragraph? Enter it in the Space Before field. There's no need to guess how many carriage returns it would take to make up that vertical distance.

### **Align to Grid**

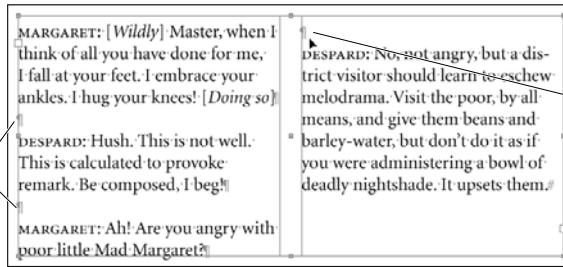
When you have more than one column of text on a page, it's important that the baselines of the text line up across the columns. The leading should be consistent with an underlying "leading grid"—an invisible set of rules for where the baselines of text should lay. Many designers even work with leading grids on pages with a single column.

Unfortunately, in most page designs, you'll find elements that have to have leading values that differ from the leading applied to the body text. Inline graphics, paragraph rules, and headings are all examples of the sort of elements we're talking about. When one of



**FIGURE 4-39**  
Space Before  
and Space After

*If you try to use carriage returns to add vertical space...*



*...you'll often end up with carriage returns at the top of a text column.*

*To avoid this problem, use paragraph space before (or after).*



*Select some paragraphs, then enter a value in the Space Above (or Space Below) field.*

*If a paragraph falls at the top of a text frame, InDesign does not apply the paragraph space above.*

these elements appears in a column of text, the leading of the lines in that column gets thrown off.

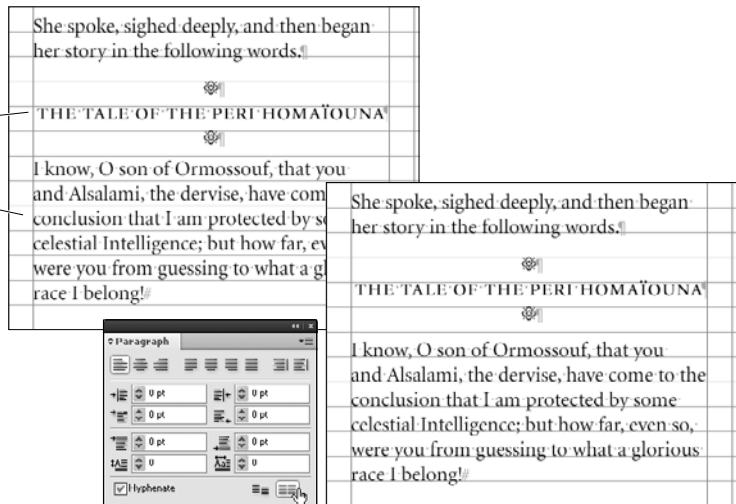
You need to compensate for leading variations inside a column of text. “Leading creep,” the misalignment of baselines in adjacent text columns, is one of the hallmarks of amateur typesetting.

While you could adjust the space above and below such intrusions, there’s an easier way: use InDesign’s Align to Baseline Grid. Select a paragraph and click the Align to Baseline Grid button in the Paragraph panel, and InDesign forces the baselines of the lines in the paragraph onto the baseline grid (see Figure 4-40). You can change the leading and position of the document baseline grid in the Grids pane of the Preferences dialog box. To see this grid, select Show Baseline Grid from the Grids & Guides submenu, under the View menu.

**Frame-based Baseline Grids.** The baseline grid can also be calculated for individual text frames. To activate a custom baseline grid, select the text frame and press Command-B/Ctrl-B to display the Text Frame Options dialog box. Click the Baseline Options tab, and then turn on the Use Custom Baseline Grid option. Use the controls to set up your custom baseline grid (see Figure 4-41). When you specify a custom grid, the Align to Grid option aligns the text baselines with the baseline grid applied to the text frame, rather than to the document baseline grid.

**FIGURE 4-40**  
**Align to Grid**

*This is all very pretty...  
...but it throws the leading of  
the following paragraph off  
of the leading grid.*

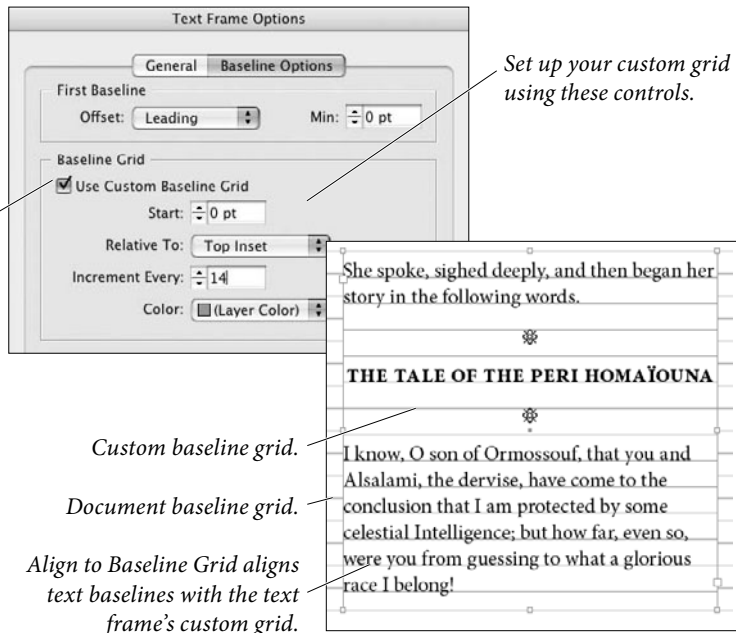


*To fix this problem, select the  
paragraph and click the Align  
Baseline to Grid button.*

*InDesign snaps the baselines  
of the text in the paragraph  
to the baseline grid.*

**FIGURE 4-41**  
**Custom Baseline Grid**

*To set up a custom baseline  
grid for a text frame, select  
the frame, then open the  
Text Frame Options dialog  
box. Click the Baseline  
Options tab, then turn on  
the Use Custom Baseline  
Grid option.*



*Set up your custom grid  
using these controls.*

*Custom baseline grid.*

*Document baseline grid.*

*Align to Baseline Grid aligns  
text baselines with the text  
frame's custom grid.*

**Why We Rarely Use Align to Baseline.** While there's no doubt that a careful study and practice of baseline grids can make your documents better looking, we rarely use the Align to Baseline Grid feature. The reason: you can get the same result by making sure your leading, Space Before, and Space After always add up to an even multiple of the leading value.

For example, if your body text has 15-point leading, then make sure your headings also have 15- or 30-point leading. If you use Space Before or Space After, make sure those values are set to a multiple of 15, such as: 15, 30, or 45 points. Finally, snap the tops of your frame to the baseline grid and set the First Baseline setting to Leading, and you can't go wrong.

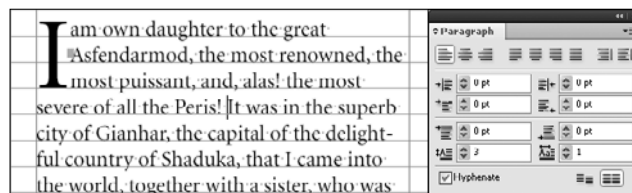
**Only Align First Line to Grid.** Often, sidebars in magazines or newsletters are set in a different font and leading than the main body text, and they're placed in their own text frame. You can make the first baseline of that sidebar align with the leading grid by using the Only Align First Line to Grid feature. This forces the first line of a selected paragraph to snap to the baseline grid, but then leaves the rest of the paragraph alone. To align the first baseline of a paragraph to the baseline grid, first align the whole paragraph to the baseline grid and then choose Only Align First Line to Grid from the Paragraph or Control panel menu.

### Drop Caps

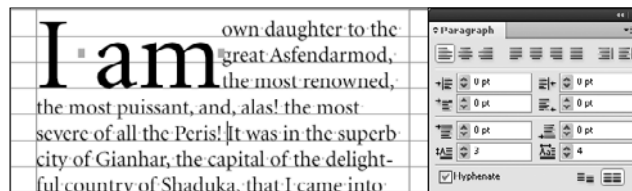
Drop caps are a paragraph-level attribute in InDesign (as they are in QuarkXPress). To apply a drop cap to a paragraph, enter a value in the Number of Lines field of the Paragraph or Control panel (this sets both the baseline shift and the point size of the drop cap). To apply the drop cap formatting to more than one character, enter a number in the Number of Characters field. InDesign enlarges the characters you specified and shifts their baseline down according to the value you entered in the Number of Lines field (see Figure 4-42).

**FIGURE 4-22**  
**Drop Caps**

*Select a paragraph.*



*Enter the number of lines you want to  
“drop” the initial character(s).*



*Enter the number of characters you want to  
apply the drop cap format to, if necessary.*

You can also make an initial cap that drops down *and* raises up by selecting the drop cap character (or characters) and increasing the point size. To add or remove space between the drop cap and the characters that follow it, place the cursor after the drop cap and adjust the Kerning value (see “Kerning,” earlier in this chapter). The only good way to get your text to follow the shape of a drop cap is to convert the character to an outline and either place that outline as frame outside the text frame or as an anchored frame with text wrap.

If you find yourself often applying character formatting to your drop caps—changing size, font, color, *etc.*—then you should create a new character style that reflects that formatting, choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Control panel menu (or press Command-Option-R/Ctrl-Alt-R), and choose your character style from the Character Style pop-up menu. Of course, you can also define this as part of your paragraph style (see “Styles,” later in this chapter).

The Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box also offers two other drop cap options: Align Left Edge and Scale Descenders. The former moves the drop cap so that its left edge is placed exactly at the left edge of the left indent—this tends to be more important with very large drop caps. The latter only takes effect when the drop cap has a descender (for example, the letter “Q” or a lower-case “p”); the whole drop cap is cleverly scaled so that the descender avoids the line below.

**Type in the Margin.** In InDesign, the edges of text frames are usually inviolable (apart from the adjustments applied by optical margin alignment). There’s no margin release (anybody still remember typewriters?), no handy command for moving one line a bit over the edge. Or is there? Instead of a single-character drop cap, specify a two-character drop cap. Add a space to the left of the first character in the paragraph—if your paragraph is justified, this should be a space that doesn’t get wider, such as an en space (Command-Shift-N/Ctrl-Shift-N). Place the cursor between the space and the drop cap and apply negative kerning until the left edge of the character moves outside of the text frame. Note, also, that using optical margin alignment may provide the effect you’re looking for without all of the extra work.

## Nested Styles

When we look at the formatting in our documents, we see patterns. In this book, for example, a paragraph containing a run-in heading starts with our “run-in heading” character style and then reverts to the formatting of our body text. A period separates the heading from the body text. To apply this formatting, we have to select the first sentence and apply the character style. Wouldn’t it be nice if we could tell our page-layout application to apply that pattern for us?

With InDesign's nested styles, we can do just that. Nested styles give you a way to automatically apply character formatting to portions of a paragraph—the first character, the first sentence, or just the third word. Nested styles rely on you first creating a character style; we discuss how to do this later in this chapter. You might want to skip forward, read that section, and then return to this explanation.

Nested styles are perfect for automatically applying a style to a drop cap, a run-in heading (where the first sentence is styled differently from the rest of the paragraph), or any structured paragraph. Catalogs, for example, often have structured paragraphs—such as a paragraph that contains an item number followed by a title, followed by a description, followed by a price. With nested styles, you can tell InDesign to apply a different character style to each element.

You can apply a nested style as local formatting, but it's generally better to define a nested style as part of a paragraph style. To apply a nested style to one or more selected paragraphs in a story, choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Paragraph or Control panel menu (or press Command-Option-R/Ctrl-Alt-R). We'll discuss how to define a paragraph style later in this chapter.

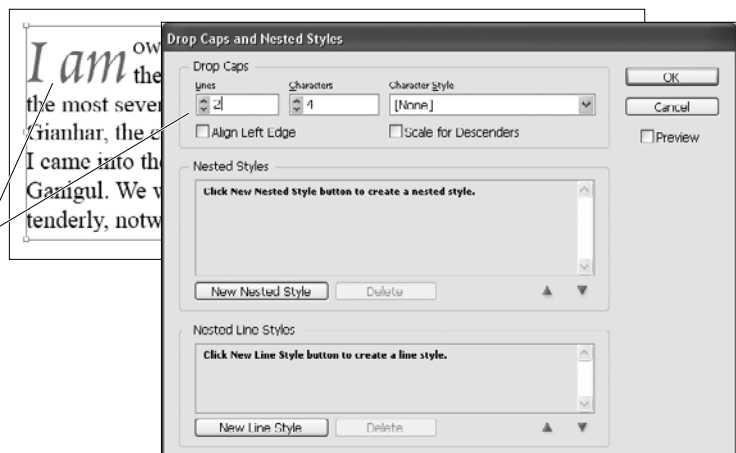
The Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box contains two sections: formatting for drop caps and formatting for paragraphs.

**Drop Caps.** Earlier in this chapter, we discussed the process of applying a drop cap to paragraph—the Drop Caps section of this dialog box is an alternate way to do the same thing.

Many designs specify that the first line of text following a drop cap be formatted a particular way—small caps are quite commonly used. With nested styles, you can accomplish this easily by adding a forced line break, as shown in Figure 4-43.

**FIGURE 4-43**  
**Drop Caps and**  
**Nested Styles**

*By including the drop cap as part of the paragraph's nested style definition, we can automatically apply a character style to the drop cap (which is a good thing to do, in any case).*



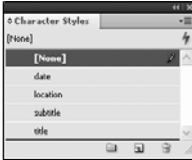
**Nested Styles.** The Nested Styles section is where you build a set of rules for InDesign to follow while formatting a paragraph. Here's how you make a nested style (see Figure 4-44).

1. Display the Drop Cap and Nested Style dialog box (choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Paragraph panel menu or the Control panel menu). Click the New Nested Style button.
2. Select the character style you want to apply from the first pop-up menu. Of course, you have to have defined at least one character style for this to work.
3. To activate the second option, click the word “through.” Select either “up to” or “through” from this pop-up menu. Choose “through” if you want to apply the style up to *and including* a given character, or “up to” to apply the style to the text but *not* to the delimiting character.
4. Click the setting in the third column to change it from “1” to some other number, if necessary. If you want to apply your character style “up to the third word,” for example, you would change this number to “3.”
5. Click the last column to activate the pop-up menu, then enter a delimiter character (or choose one from the pop-up menu). To apply the style up to the first en space in the paragraph, for example, choose En Spaces from the pop-up menu. You can enter any character you want into this field—including many of the find/change metacharacters.
6. If you want another style to follow the one you just made, start at Step 1 again. You can also repeat one or more rules by choosing Repeat from the first pop-up menu, creating a loop.

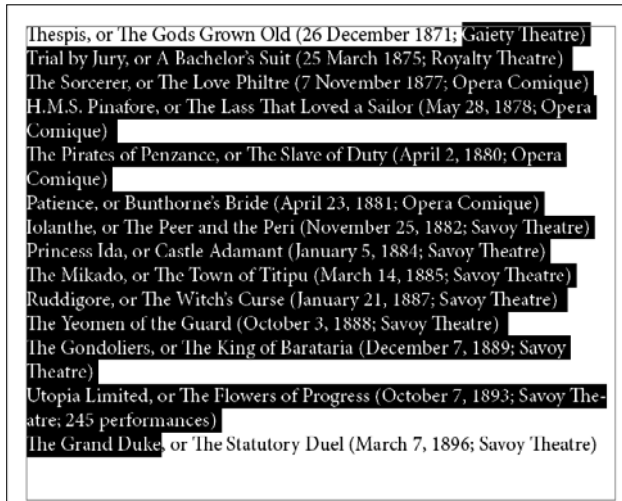
**End Nested Style Here.** What if you want to apply a character style to some portion of your paragraph, but there's no obvious “stopping point” you can target? For example, each paragraph may require the style up to a different point. No problem: Just choose End Nested Style Character from the last pop-up menu in Step 5, above. Then place the text cursor at that point in the paragraph and choose End Nested Style Here from the Other submenu in the Insert Special Character submenu (under the Type or context menu). This is an invisible character, so it won't reflow your text. If a paragraph doesn't contain one of these special characters, InDesign applies the character style you specify to the entire paragraph.

**FIGURE 4-44**  
**Nested Styles**

*This text needs to be formatted.*



*We've created character styles to assist us in formatting the text.*



*We apologize, in advance, for the complexity of this illustration (which continues on the next page). We can't help it—this stuff is nothing short of magical.*

*We want to format the text according to the following rules:*

1. Apply the “title” style to the text up to the comma.
2. Leave the comma and “or” in the paragraph’s default style.
3. Format the subtitle (the text up to the open parenthesis).
4. Format the open parenthesis character using the paragraph’s default style.

*Example line*

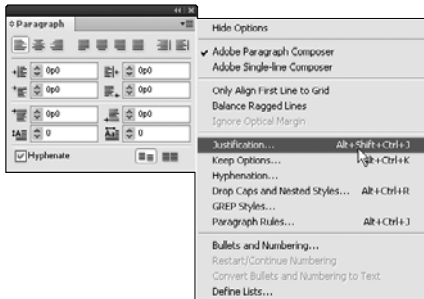
Thespis, or The Gods Grown Old (26 December 1871; Gaiety Theatre)

5. Format the date (the text up to the semicolon).

6. Format the semicolon character using the paragraph’s default style.

7. Apply the “location” character style to the theater name.

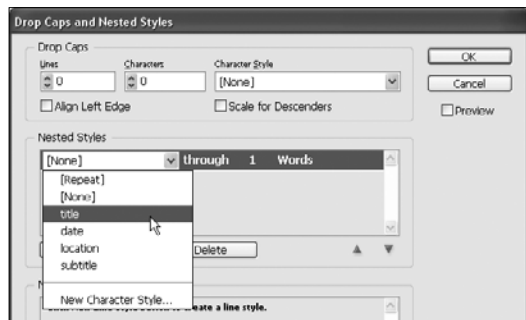
8. Format the close parenthesis character using the paragraph’s default style.



*Rather than work our way through the text and apply character styles manually, we choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles (from the Paragraph panel or the Control panel menu).*

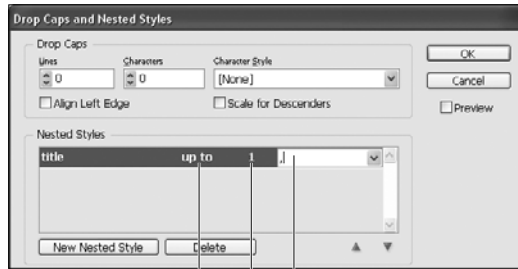
*InDesign displays the Drop Cap and Nested Styles dialog box.*

*Click the New Nested Style button. InDesign creates a new nested style. Choose a character style from the first pop-up menu (you can also create a new character style, if necessary).*



**FIGURE 4-44**  
**Applying Nested Styles**  
**(continued)**

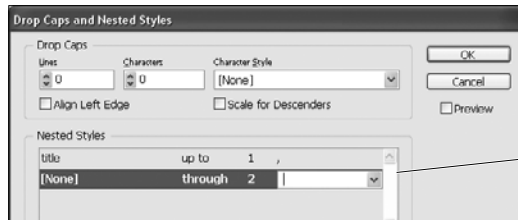
*The following pop-up menus set the length of the text style range.*



*Choose “up to” or “through” from this pop-up menu. Enter the number of delimiter characters.*

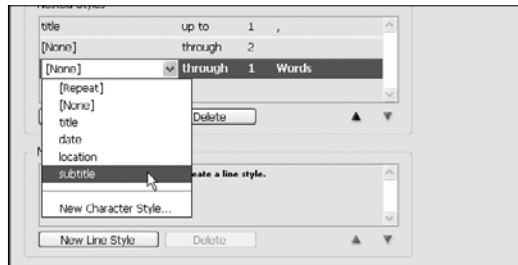
*Enter a delimiter character (or choose one of the preset delimiters from the pop-up menu).*

*Following the title, we want to leave the comma and the word “or” in the default character formatting for the paragraph. Click New Nested Style and leave the Style pop-up menu set to “[None]”.*



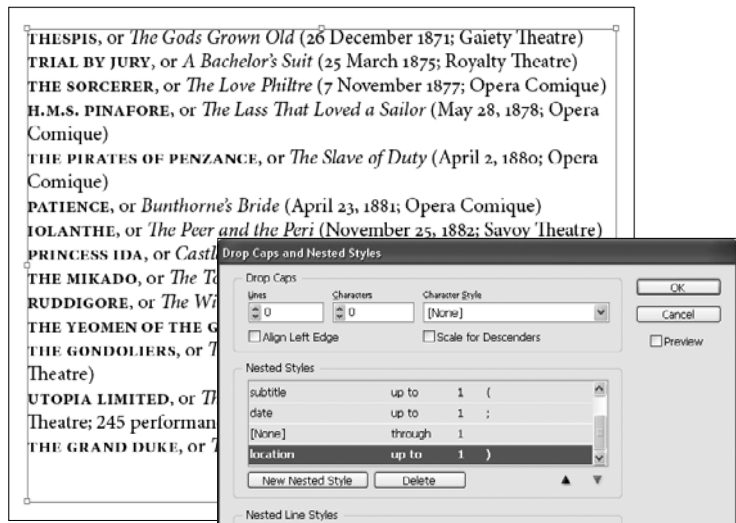
*We entered a space here.*

*At this point, we’re ready to set up the formatting for the subtitle. The character at the end of the subtitle text is an open parenthesis, so we enter that character and set the range to “up to.”*



*We create a further six character styles to cover all of the rules we’ve defined. When we’re done, we have formatted all of the text. No selecting, no clicking, and no keyboard shortcuts. This process takes far longer to explain than it does to do.*

*It’s even better when you make the nested styles part of a paragraph style, as we’ll demonstrate later in this chapter.*

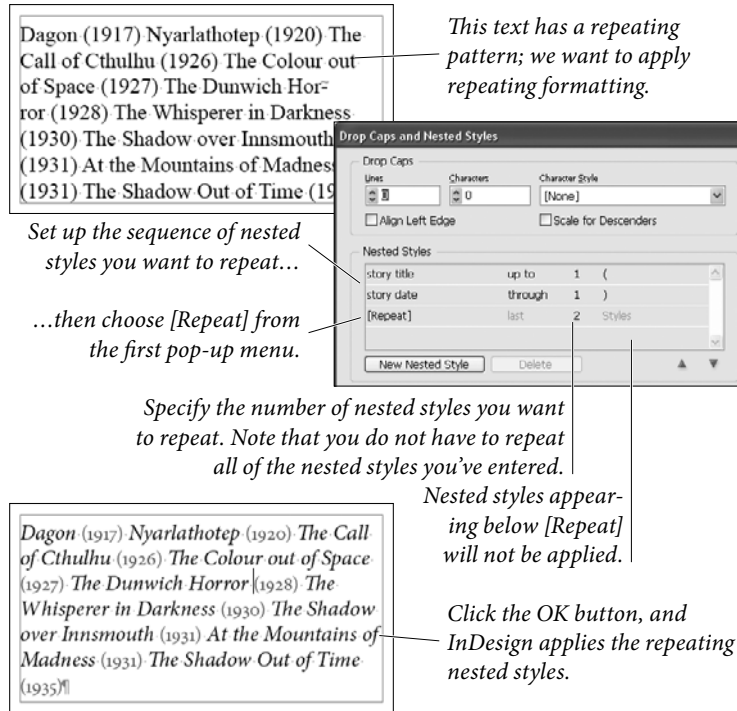




## Repeating Nested Styles

Nested styles have a special setting, which appears on the Character Style pop-up menu in the Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box: the Repeat option. You can use this option to repeat some or all of the sequence of nested styles you've entered, as shown in Figure 4-45. Nested styles appearing below the Repeat nested style are ignored.

**FIGURE 4-45**  
Repeating a Nested Style



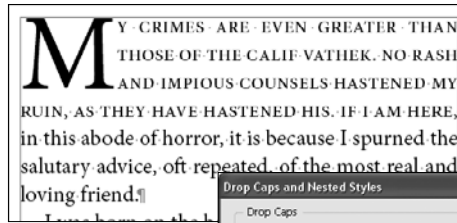
## Nested Line Styles

Nested line styles are a special case of a nested style. In a nested line style, the end of a line defines the end of the style. Nested line styles are particularly useful when you want to apply special formatting to the first line of a paragraph, or repeat sequences of line formatting through a paragraph.

To create a nested line style, follow these steps (see Figure 4-46).

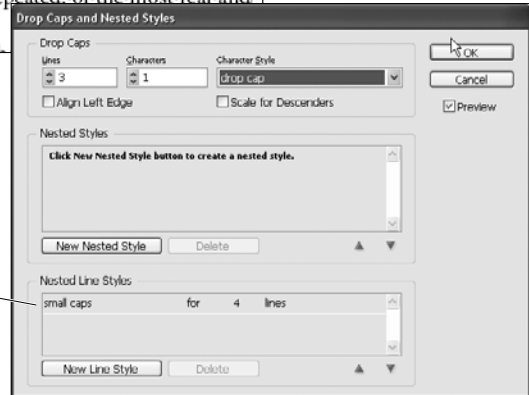
1. Select some text, then choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Paragraph panel menu (or from the Control panel menu). InDesign displays the Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box.
2. Use the controls in the Nested Line Styles section of the dialog box to specify the character style and number of lines for the nested line style. Like nested styles, nested line styles can repeat.
3. Click the OK button to close the dialog and apply the nested line style(s).

**FIGURE 4-46**  
Nested Line Styles



*In this example, we applied a drop cap and then used a nested line style to format the first four lines.*

*Use the controls in the Nested Line Styles section of the dialog box to specify the character style and number of lines for the nested line style*



## Nested GREP Styles

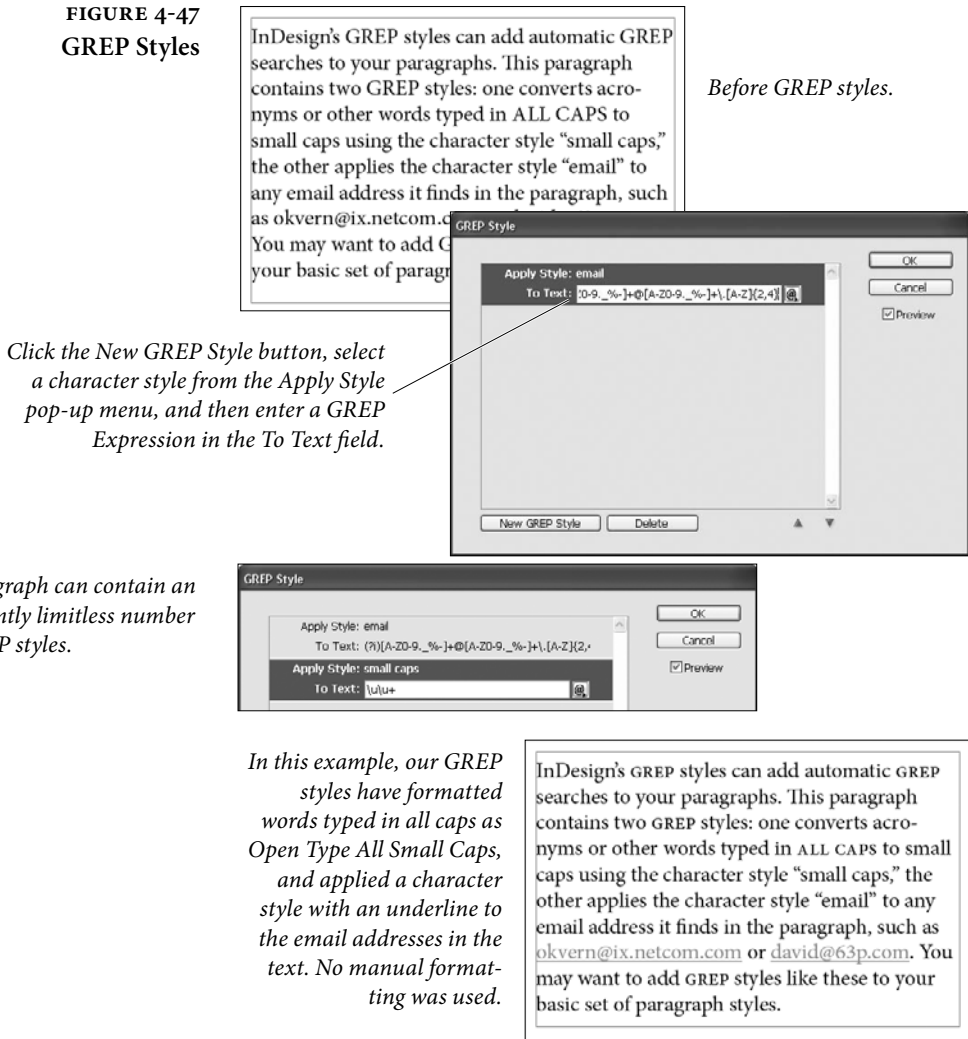
While nested styles make use of ordered sequences of special characters and other text, GREP styles can apply a character style to any text that matches a GREP expression—in any location, repetition, or order in a paragraph. This feature is brilliant, and we think that your basic set of paragraph styles will probably acquire a number of nested GREP styles as soon as you fully understand what it does.

To create a GREP style, follow the steps below (see Figure 4-47).

1. Select some text, then choose GREP Styles from the Paragraph panel menu (or from the Control panel menu). InDesign displays the GREP Styles dialog box. It's a good idea to turn on the Preview option—that way, you can see the effect of your GREP style as you construct it.
2. Click the New Grep Style button. InDesign adds a new GREP style.
3. Select a character style from the Apply Style pop-up menu.
4. Enter the GREP expression in the To Text field. As in the GREP panel of the Find/Change dialog box, you can build the GREP expression using the associated pop-up menu. Even if you have Preview turned on, however, InDesign will not apply the GREP expression until you press Return.
5. Click the OK button to close the dialog box and apply the GREP style.

To delete a GREP style, select the style and click the Delete button.

**FIGURE 4-47**  
**GREP Styles**



*A paragraph can contain an apparently limitless number of GREP styles.*

*In this example, our GREP styles have formatted words typed in all caps as Open Type All Small Caps, and applied a character style with an underline to the email addresses in the text. No manual formatting was used.*

## Multi-Line Composition

Composition—the method our desktop publishing program uses to fit text into a line—isn't glamorous. It's not going to be the focus of any glossy magazine advertisement. In fact, most people never consciously notice good or bad composition. We are convinced, however, that readers perceive the difference between well spaced and poorly spaced text. Good spacing not only improves readability, it also conveys an aura of quality to the publication or organization. In short, it's worth caring about.

There are four basic ways to fit text onto a line:

- ▶ Controlling the spacing between the letters.
- ▶ Controlling the spacing between the words.

- Adjusting the size of the characters themselves.
- Breaking the words at line endings by hyphenating.

If you're serious about type, you already know that a large part of your typesetting time is spent fixing bad line breaks and lines with poor word and letter spacing. In our experience, fully one third of our typesetting and production time in QuarkXPress or other programs is spent "walking the lines"—fixing spacing problems.

Other desktop publishing programs use a "single line composer" to compose lines of text. As the program arranges the characters on each line, it only considers the spacing of that line, which means that adjacent lines may have dramatically different spacing. The greater the variation of letter and word spacing among lines in a paragraph, the harder it is to read (and the less appealing it is to look at).

InDesign, however, has both a single-line composer and a multi-line composer, which can examine an entire paragraph at a time.

**How does it work?** The multi-line composer (called Adobe Paragraph Composer) creates a list of possible line break points in the lines it examines. It then ranks the different sets of possible break points, considering the effect of each break point on spacing and hyphenation. Finally, it chooses the best of the alternatives. You'd think that this would take a lot of time—but it doesn't. When you use the default settings, you get composition speed that's equal to that of a single-line composition system, and you get better-looking text (see Figure 4-48).

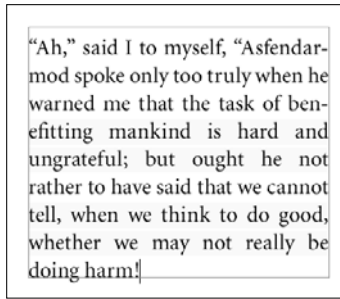
Multi-line composition takes some getting used to because characters *preceding* the cursor will sometimes *move* as you enter or edit text—something you won't see in most other programs. You really can't be certain of the position of the line breaks in a paragraph until you've entered the last word in the paragraph. Luckily, it doesn't take long to adjust to this behavior—especially when the results are so much better than what you're accustomed to.

In some rare cases you might want or need to turn the Adobe Paragraph Composer off and exercise manual control over the line breaks in a paragraph—when lines absolutely must break a particular way. Also, single-line composition is faster than multi-line, so if quality isn't an issue, you might consider turning it off.

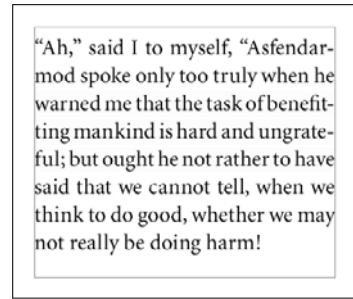
Multi-line composition is on by default; to use the single-line composition method, select a paragraph and choose Adobe Single-line Composer from the Paragraph or Control panel menu (or in the Justification dialog box). To turn multi-line composition back on again for the paragraph, choose Adobe Paragraph Composer.

**FIGURE 4-48**  
**Multi-Line**  
**Composition**

*Note the extreme variation in word and letter spacing from line to line in the text composed using the Single-line composer.*



*Single-line Composer.*



*Paragraph Composer*

## Hyphenation Controls

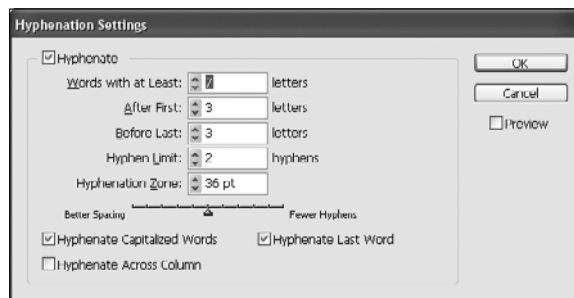
If you're tired of having your favorite page layout program hyphenate the word "image" after the "m," you'll like InDesign's hyphenation controls. To set the hyphenation options for a paragraph, choose Hyphenation from the Paragraph or Control panel's menu. InDesign displays the Hyphenation dialog box (see Figure 4-49). QuarkXPress users are used to having both hyphenation and justification settings in one dialog box; in InDesign they're broken into two. Also, in QuarkXPress, you have to make and save an H&J setting first, and then apply it to a paragraph. In InDesign, you select a paragraph and change its hyphenation and justification settings.

The first checkbox in the Hyphenation Settings dialog box, simply labeled Hyphenate, controls whether the selected paragraph or paragraphs will be hyphenated. This is identical to turning on and off the Hyphenate checkbox in the Paragraph panel. Then there are seven other controls that determine the hyphenation rules.

**Words with at Least.** You can direct InDesign's hyphenation system to leave short words alone using the Words with at Least option. If you don't want short words to break, you can set this to 5 or higher.

**After First.** The value you enter here sets the minimum size, in characters, of the word fragment preceding a hyphen. Many typesetters dislike two-letter fragments, so they increase this value to three.

**FIGURE 4-49**  
**Hyphenation Settings**  
**Dialog Box**



**Before Last.** The value you enter here sets the minimum size, in characters, of the word fragment following a hyphen. Some people don't mind if the "ly" in "truly" sits all by itself on a line. You care about type, so you set this to at least three.

**Hyphen Limit.** You can limit the number of consecutive hyphens you'll allow to appear at the left edge of a column of text using the Hyphen Limit field. Enter a value greater than one to allow consecutive hyphens.

**Hyphenation Zone.** Another way to limit the number of hyphens in a paragraph is the Hyphenation Zone setting. The idea is that there is an invisible zone along the right margin of each paragraph. If InDesign is trying to break a word at the end of a line, it looks to see where the hyphenation zone is. If the word *before* the potentially hyphenated word falls inside the zone, then InDesign just gives up and pushes the word onto the next line (without hyphenating it). If the previous word does not fall into the zone, then InDesign will hyphenate the word.

That's the concept, at least. As it turns out, InDesign's composition algorithms are complex enough that the hyphenation zone is often overridden by other factors, especially when using the Paragraph Composer. In addition, the Hyphenation Zone setting doesn't have any effect at all on justified text. In general, for non-justified text, larger amounts mean fewer hyphens but more variation in line lengths ("rag").

**Hyphenation Slider.** Someone, somewhere must have complained that InDesign's hyphenation controls weren't flexible enough, because those wacky engineers at Adobe have added the Hyphenation Slider to the Hyphenation Settings dialog box. We're sure there's a lot of math behind what this slider is doing, but all you really need to know is that you can move the slider back and forth between Better Spacing and Fewer Hyphens to get a more pleasing appearance (turn on preview to see the effect of the slider).

This control is called "Nigel" because it goes all the way to eleven.

**Hyphenate Capitalized Words.** To prevent capitalized words (i.e., proper names) from hyphenating, turn off this option.

**Hyphenate Last Words.** We pride ourselves on having open minds and strong stomachs, but there are few things more nauseating than the last word of a paragraph being hyphenated, leaving a little runt

on the last line. We won't say that it's impossible to avoid it entirely, but you should at least turn off the Hyphenate Last Words checkbox, so that it won't happen automatically.

**Hyphenate Across Columns.** Our generous, kind, and patient publisher asks little from us (besides the best book we can muster), but they do ask one thing: Please don't allow words to hyphenate from one page to another. In older editions, we had to proof each page manually. Now we simply turn off the Hyphenate Across Columns checkbox in our body text paragraph style. Note that this stops hyphenation across all columns, even from one column in a multi-column text frame to the next. By the way, we have seen this control fail, so it appears that InDesign considers it a request rather than a rule; it tries not to hyphenate across a column, but it will if it thinks it needs to.

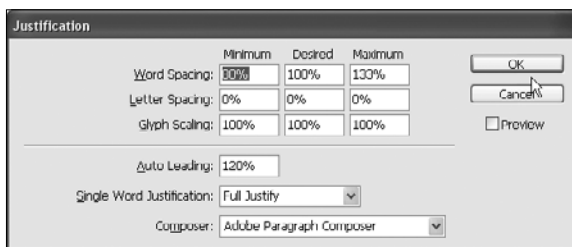
**Discretionary Hyphens.** There's another way to control hyphenation: Use a discretionary hyphen character. When you type a discretionary hyphen (Command-Shift-hyphen/Ctrl-Shift-hyphen) in a word, you're telling InDesign that you wouldn't mind if the word hyphenates here. This doesn't force the program to hyphenate the word at that point; it just gives it the option. This is much better than typing a regular hyphen because if (or when) your text reflows, you won't be stuck with hyphens littered in the middles of your paragraphs—the discretionary hyphen “disappears” when it's not needed. Another way to get a discretionary hyphen is to use the Insert Special Character submenu (in the Type menu or the context-sensitive menu).

By the way, longtime QuarkXPress users know that in that program you can place a discretionary hyphen before a word to make it not break. That's also true in InDesign, but, if you want a word (or phrase) not to hyphenate, select the text and turn on the No Break option in the Character panel's menu. If it's a word that you think should never be hyphenated, or should always be hyphenated differently than InDesign thinks, you can add it to your user dictionary (see “Adding Words to the User Dictionary” in Chapter 3, “Text”).

## **Controlling Word and Letter Spacing**

When InDesign composes the text in your publications, it does so by following the spacing rules you've laid down using the controls in the Justification dialog box (choose Justification from the Paragraph panel menu or press Command-Option-Shift-J/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-J to display the dialog box; see Figure 4-50). Contrary to popular opinion, this dialog box controls all text composition, not only that of justified text.

**FIGURE 4-50**  
**Justification Dialog Box**



This dialog box offers six controls: Word Spacing, Letter Spacing, Glyph Scaling, Auto Leading, Single Word Justification, and Composer. The important thing to remember is that you will never find a set of spacing values that will work for all fonts, point sizes, and line lengths. The text itself plays a role: spacing settings that work for one author may not work for another, even when the typesetting specifications are the same. You have to experiment to discover the settings that work best for you and your publications.

InDesign's default settings give you a reasonable starting point. The spacing values encourage wide word spacing over narrow word spacing, and attempt to discourage letter spacing.

**Word Spacing.** You can adjust the amount of space InDesign places between words by changing the Minimum, Desired, and Maximum percentages. In non-justified text, only the Desired value matters. In InDesign, the values in the word spacing fields are *percentages of the standard word space* (the width of the space is defined by the font's designer, and is stored in the font). The defaults tend to encourage wide word spacing over narrow word spacing in justified text.

**Letter Spacing.** You can adjust the amount of space the program places between each character in your paragraphs by changing the Minimum, Desired, and Maximum percentages. Again, in text that isn't justified, only the Desired value makes a difference. Note that these percentages represent the *amount of variation* from a standard spacing unit—the “spaceband” defined in the font. By default, the percentages are all set to zero, which discourages letter spacing.

**Glyph Scaling.** When you enter anything other than 100% in any of the Glyph Scaling fields, you give InDesign permission to scale the characters in the paragraph to make them fit. Ole and David disagree on usefulness of this feature. Ole is not a type purist, but he does not see the point in distorting character shapes when other, better options are available. Why take the risk? David, on the other hand insists that no one can see the difference when you allow InDesign



to scale glyphs by plus or minus one percent (and sometimes even two). Ole thinks that this is something like thinking that it's not committing a crime if no one catches you.

Both authors agree that glyph scaling might come in handy if you have exhausted *every other available option* to get a line to fit. What you do is, of course, up to you and your conscience.

**Auto Leading.** The Auto Leading feature is easy: This controls how InDesign calculates the leading of characters that have a leading of Auto (see “Leading,” earlier in this chapter, for why we almost never use Auto leading). This control is here, rather than in one of the Preferences dialog boxes, because the base autoleading percentage is a property of individual paragraphs (unlike QuarkXPress, where the autoleading percentage is set at the document level).

**Single Word Justification.** What do you want InDesign to do when a word in the middle of a paragraph is so long (or a column so narrow) that only that one word fits on the line? If the line isn't justified, it's no big deal. But if the line is justified, do you want InDesign to add letterspacing to spread the word out across the line? Or make it flush left, flush right, or centered? That's what the Single Word Justification pop-up menu controls.

**Composer.** Earlier in this chapter, we discussed the Paragraph Composer and how it's different from the Single Line composer. Here's one more place you can specify which InDesign should use.

## Balance Ragged Lines

Sometimes headlines or headings are way out of balance—and we don't just mean the political slant. We mean that the lines are of wildly varying length. The first line fills the column; the second line contains a single short word. This is, at best, unsightly; at worst, it makes the text hard to read.

InDesign's Balance Ragged Lines feature can help you make the line widths in a paragraph more even. To do this, choose Balance Ragged Lines from the Paragraph panel or Control panel menu. (Note that this feature only works on non-justified paragraphs.) Take a look at Figure 4-51 to see the effect of Balance Ragged Lines.

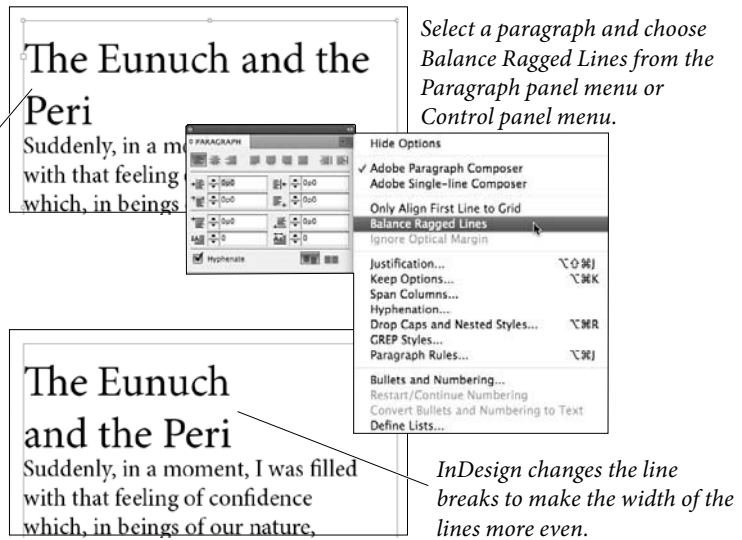
If the last line of the paragraph is significantly narrower than the other lines, the program breaks the text so that the last line is wider.

Balance Ragged Lines generally produces an inverted pyramid shape—that is, the first line is longer than the second line, the third line is shorter than the second line, and so on. This matches Ole's expectations, but is the opposite of what David expects.

**FIGURE 4-51**  
**Balancing Ragged Lines**

*The lines of this heading are of very different widths.*

*Since Balance Ragged Lines is a paragraph-level attribute, it can be made part of a paragraph style.*



### Highlighting Typographic Problems

InDesign can “flag” text composition problems—cases where the program has had to break your rules for composing text, or where substituted fonts appear in your publication. Open the Preferences dialog box, choose the Composition pane, then turn on the options in the Highlight section of the Composition Preferences dialog box. Lines in which InDesign has had to violate composition rules you’ve established (using the Justification and Keep Options dialog boxes) are highlighted in yellow; substituted fonts are highlighted in pink (see Figure 4-52). We usually work with these turned on so we can quickly identify “problem” lines.

### Paragraph Keep Options

A *widow* is the last line of a paragraph that winds up all by itself at the top of a column or page. An *orphan* is the first line of a paragraph that lands all by itself at the bottom of a column or page. Widows and orphans are the bane of a typesetter’s existence.

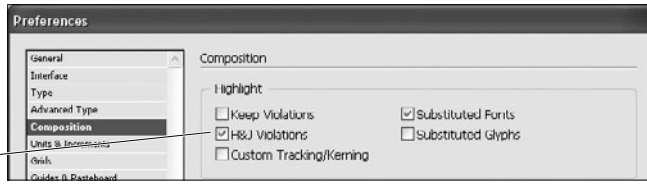
Designers sometimes also refer to the single-word last line of a paragraph as either a widow or an orphan. To avoid the confusion, we often just use the word *runt*.

All typographic widows and orphans are bad, but certain kinds are really bad—for example, a widow line that consists of only one word, or even the last part of a hyphenated word. Another related typographic horror is the heading that stands alone with its following paragraph on the next page.

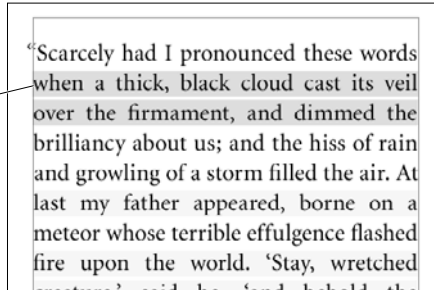
Fortunately, InDesign has a set of controls that can easily prevent widows and orphans from sneaking into your document. These controls—along with a setting that lets you force a paragraph to begin at a particular place—live in the Keep Options dialog box, which you

**FIGURE 4-52**  
Highlighting Loose  
and Tight Lines

When you turn on the  
H&J Violations option...



...InDesign highlights lines  
that break the spacing ranges  
you set in the Justification  
dialog box.

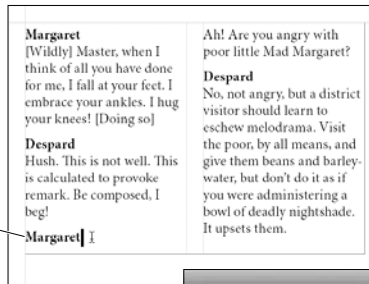


InDesign uses three shades  
of yellow to highlight loose  
or tight lines—darker  
shades indicate more  
severe spacing problems.

can find by selecting Keep Options from the Paragraph panel's menu, or by pressing Command-Option-K/Ctrl-Alt-K (see Figure 4-53). There are four parts to this dialog box: Keep with Previous, Keep with Next, Keep Lines Together, and Start Paragraph.

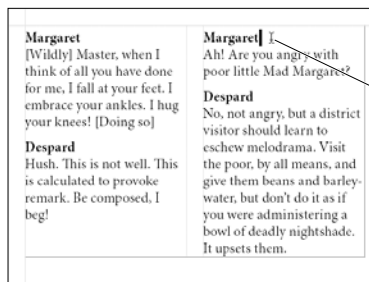
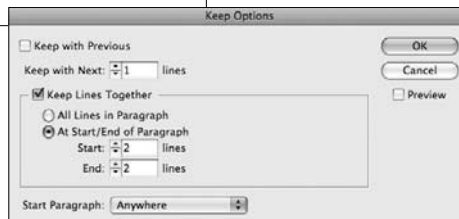
**FIGURE 4-53**  
Keep Options

This heading has come  
“unstuck” from the  
paragraph following it.



In addition to the Keep with  
Next control demonstrated in  
this example, the Keep Options  
dialog box contains other options  
that you can use to control the  
way that paragraphs break (or  
don't break) across columns and  
pages.

To prevent this, select the  
heading paragraph and  
display the Keep Options  
dialog box.



Enter a value in the Keep  
with Next field. This way,  
when the paragraph follow-  
ing the heading moves to  
a new page or column, the  
heading follows along.

**Keep with Previous.** The Keep with Previous option keeps the top line of the paragraph with the previous paragraph, such as when you're adding notes below only some entries in a list.

**Keep with Next.** The Keep with Next Lines feature helps you ensure that headings and the paragraphs that follow them are kept together. If the paragraph is pushed onto a new column, a new page, or below an obstructing object, the heading follows. It's rare that we need to type more than 1 in the Lines field.

**Keep Lines Together.** The Keep Lines Together feature is the primary control over widows and orphans. When you turn on the Keep Lines Together checkbox and choose All Lines in Paragraph, InDesign won't break the paragraph across column or pages.

You can control the number of lines that should be kept together at the beginning and end of the paragraph by choosing At Start/End of Paragraph. The value you type in the Start field determines the minimum number of lines that InDesign allows at the beginning of a paragraph. For example, a Start value of 2 means that if at least two lines of that paragraph cannot be placed on the page, then the entire paragraph is pushed over to the next page. The value specified in the End field determines the minimum number of lines that InDesign lets fall alone at the top of a column or after an obstruction. Setting both Start and End to 2 means you'll never get a widow or orphan.

**Start Paragraph.** Use the options on the Start Paragraph pop-up menu to force a column or page break before your selected paragraph. For example, if you always want a particular paragraph to sit at the top of a page, select the paragraph and choose On Next Page from the Start Paragraph pop-up menu.

Note that you can also get a similar effect by choosing an item from the Insert Break Character submenu in the Type menu. The Start Paragraph feature is better, however, because you can use it in a definition of a paragraph style (see "Styles," later in this chapter).

---

## Bullets and Numbering

As the human attention span has grown shorter under the stresses of modern life, lists of one sort or another have come to dominate our texts. Abraham Lincoln could spend several days delivering a single perfect paragraph to an informed audience; we must convey the same information in an executive summary that takes no more

than nanoseconds to parse. InDesign aids and abets this diminution of the human intellect by providing the Bullets and Numbering feature, which provides:

- Bullets.
- Numbering.

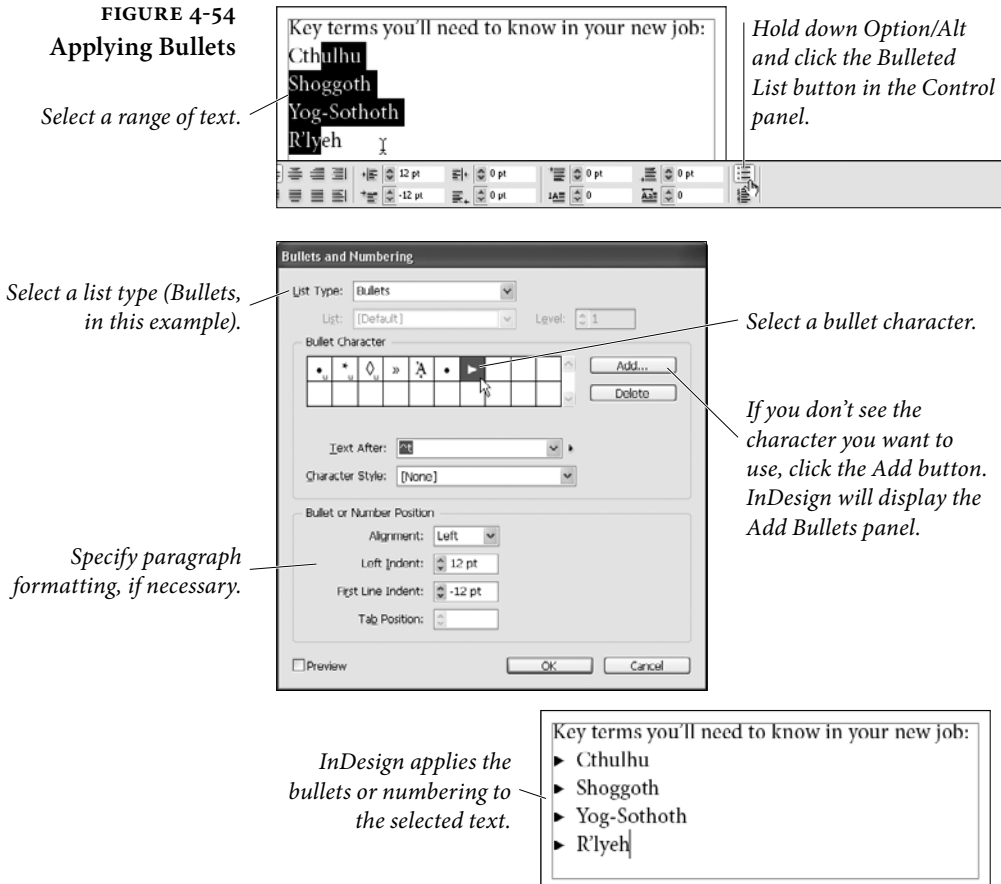
Bullets and Numbering is a paragraph level attribute that applies a bullet character or a numeral to the start of the paragraph. Applying a bullet is straightforward; numbering is a bit more complicated.

### Applying Bullets

The simplest way to apply bullets to a selection of paragraphs is to click the Bulleted List button in the Paragraph view of the Control panel (or choose Apply Bullets from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu of the Type menu). Follow the steps below, and you can control the formatting, and position of the bullets (see Figure 4-54):

1. Select a range of text.
2. Choose Bullets and Numbering from the Paragraph panel or Control panel menu. You can also Option/Alt-click the Bulleted List button in the Paragraph view of the Control panel. InDesign displays the Bullets and Numbering dialog box.
3. Choose Bullets from the List Type pop-up menu.
4. Pick from among the choices in the Bullet Character section, which works very much like the Glyphs panel described earlier in this chapter—the dialog contains a short list of characters, but you can click the Add button to choose characters from any of the available fonts and add them then to the list.
5. If you want the bullet to be followed by a tab, leave the Text After field set to ^t. If you'd prefer the bullet followed by something else (such as an en space), you can type it in that field or pick from the flyout menu to the right of the field.
6. You can apply formatting to the bullet character in the Character Style pop-up menu (assuming you have defined a style).
7. Adjust the position of the bullet in the Bullet or Number Position section. The Left Indent and First Line Indent fields control the indents for the entire paragraph (overriding any other indents you've set). To hang the bullet in the margin, you'd want a positive Left Indent and a negative First Line Indent.

**FIGURE 4-54**  
**Applying Bullets**



If the First Line Indent is set to zero and your Text After is set to a tab character, the position of the text after the bullet is defined by the first tab stop. If you've assigned tab stops already, you can ignore this.

The Alignment pop-up menu lets you control the position of the bullet at the beginning of the paragraph—Left, Right, or Centered—but it only works when your Left Indent is large enough to allow the character to move (InDesign won't allow the bullet to fall outside the text frame).

8. Once you've got the inserted characters to look the way you want them to (turn on the Preview option), click the OK button to apply the list formatting to the selected paragraphs.

**Default Bullets.** If you choose a custom bullet character with the Add button in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box, InDesign remembers that bullet in the currently-open document. If you need

that same bullet character in other documents, you can add it to the list of default bullets:

1. Close all documents in InDesign.
2. Open the Bullets and Numbering dialog box.
3. Set the Type pop-up menu to Bullets.
4. Use the Add button to add your desired bullet character.
5. If you want this character to be the default bullet (the one InDesign gives you if you don't specify any other), select it.
6. Set the Type pop-up menu back to None and then click OK.

### Applying Numbering

When Adobe first implemented the automatic numbering feature, we complained that it was anemic and useless. They responded in the next version by adding so many features that it's now not only extremely useful but also somewhat overwhelming to use. Fortunately, it's all logical if you take it step by step and understand which parts of the Bullets and Numbering dialog box you can ignore.

The simplest way to apply numbering to one or more selected paragraphs is to click the Numbered List button in the Control panel (when it's in paragraph mode), or choose Apply Numbers from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu. This gives you a basic numbered list, starting at 1.

**Continuing Numbering.** Let's say you have five paragraphs, but the third paragraph shouldn't be numbered (that is, the section numbered "2" has two paragraphs). The fastest way to accomplish this is to select all five paragraphs, turn on numbering, then select just the third paragraph and turn numbering off.

Alternately, you could assign numbering to the first two paragraphs and then number the last two paragraphs (which will start at "1" again). Then place the cursor in the fourth paragraph (which is currently numbered "1") and choose Continue Numbering from either the Context menu or the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu.

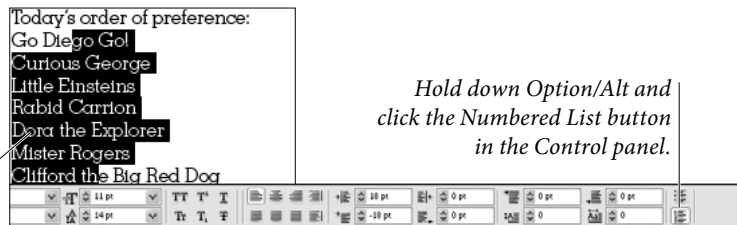
**Formatting Numbers.** The default formatting applied to automatic numbers is dull as rocks: the number—set in the same font, size, color, and styling as the first character of the paragraph—followed by a tab. In order to spice up your numbering, select Bullets and Numbering from the Control panel menu (or Option/Alt-click the Numbered

List button in the Control panel). When the List Type pop-up menu is set to Numbers, you can adjust the following settings in the Numbering Style section of the dialog box (see Figure 4-55).

- **Format.** You can choose from among normal numerals (such as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*), Roman numerals (I, II, III, *etc.*), or alphabet characters (a, b, c, *etc.*) from the Format pop-up menu. Choose None to omit the number entirely, though it's rare that you'd want to.
- **Number.** You can control how the number appears by typing codes into the Number field. The default value, `^#.^t`, means type the current number for this list, followed by a period, then followed by a tab. You don't have to remember the codes—you can use the pop-up menu associated with the field. If you do use a tab character, it has to be the last code in this field.

**FIGURE 4-55**  
Applying Numbering

Select a range of text.



InDesign displays the Bullets and Numbering dialog box.

Select a character style for the numbers, if necessary.

Here we've set up a hanging indent.



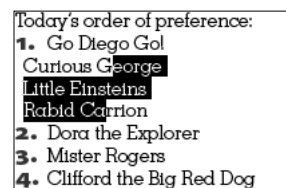
You can ignore List and Level at first.

Choose a number format.

Enter the characters you want to appear around the number.



The list, numbered



Turning off numbering for a few paragraphs rennumbers the list.



You can type pretty much anything in the Number field. For example, you could type Item No. ^#^\_ which means type “Item No.” followed by a space, then the number, then an en dash.

- **Character Style.** InDesign applies the character style you choose from this pop-up menu to everything in the Number field.
- **Mode.** Use this pop-up menu to specify whether the list should Continue from Previous Number or Start At a specific number.

**Positioning Numbers.** You can adjust the position of your number in the same ways we discussed positioning bullets. You can make the right edge of the numbers align by choosing Right from the Alignment pop-up menu and setting the Left Indent to a positive number.

**Multi-Level Numbering.** What if you need a sub-list? For example, after number 4, you might have 4a, 4b, 4c, and so on. Or in a long technical document, you might have sections numbered 1.1.1, then 1.1.2, then 1.1.3, then 1.2.1, and so on. To pull off this kind of numbering, you need to assign levels in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box, then—optionally—adjust the Number field’s codes (see Figure 4-56).

This can get confusing, so let’s focus on that 4a, 4b, 4c example. After you select the paragraphs you want to affect (in this case, the three paragraphs after paragraph 4), open the dialog box and change the Level field to 2. This defines a sub-list inside the main numbered list. Now choose the lower-case alphabet from the Format pop-up menu and change the Number field to ^1^#.^t (which means “type the most recent level 1 number, then the current number in this sub-list, then a period and a tab”). You may also want to adjust the Left Indent in the Position section so that the sub-list is further indented.

**Creating Named Lists.** Numbering isn’t just for a few paragraphs in a single story. You can create far more complex kinds of numbered lists that continue across multiple text frames, or even across multiple documents in a book. You can also have multiple numbered lists in parallel, for example, figure numbering and table numbering. The key to all these tricks is to define named lists. (InDesign just calls these “lists,” but we call them “named lists” to avoid confusion with the generic “lists” that we’ve been discussing.)

You can define a named list by choosing Define Lists from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu (under the Type menu) and then clicking the New button in the Define Lists dialog box. Or, if you already have the Bullets and Numbering dialog box open, you

**FIGURE 4-56**  
**Multi-Level Numbering**

**Red (American vineyards)**  
*Big Red Gulp*  
*Chef Boyardeaux*  
*Box O' Grapes*  
*Mogen Danny*  
**White (American)**  
*World Championship*  
*Wriesling*  
*Chateau des Moines*  
*Nasti Spumanti*  
*Chateau du Crack Chardonnay*  
*White Trashfindel*  
*I Can't Believe It's Not*  
*Vinegar!*

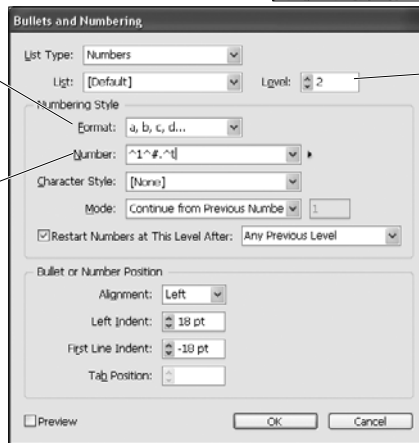
This list has been formatted, but now we want to add numbers.

The headings are numbered as usual (Level 1).



We changed the numbering format to lowercase Roman.

We entered codes in the Number field to include both the first and current level numbering.



We set the level of the nested list to 2.

**1 Red (American vineyards)**  
*1a Big Red Gulp*  
*1b Chef Boyardeaux*  
*1c Box O' Grapes*  
*1d Mogen Danny*  
**2 White (American)**  
*2a. World Championship*  
*Wriesling*  
*2b. Chateau des Moines*  
*2c. Nasti Spumanti*  
*2d. Chateau du Crack*  
*Chardonnay*  
*2e. White Trashfindel*  
*2f. I Can't Believe It's Not*  
*Vinegar!*

can choose New List from the List pop-up menu. In either case, you get the New List dialog box, in which you can type the list's name and choose whether you want this numbered list to continue across multiple stories (that is, across more than one unthreaded text frame) and/or across more than one document in a book (see Figure 4-57).

Once you have a named list defined, you can assign it to a paragraph by choosing it from the List pop-up menu in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box.

However, the order in which paragraphs are numbered may be confusing to you. Here are the rules:

- In general, numbering follows page order. For example, if you have an unthreaded text frame on page 1 and another on page 2, InDesign will number paragraphs on page 1 first—just as you'd expect.
- If you have more than one frame on a page (and those frames aren't threaded), numbering in the frames is based on the order in which the frames were created—not the order on which they appear on the page.

**FIGURE 4-57**  
**Named Lists**

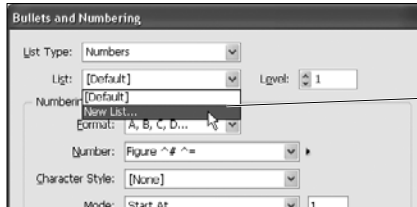
*...and apply numbering.  
Because the text frames  
are not threaded together,  
we need to create a new  
named list to keep our  
figure numbering straight.*

*InDesign displays the  
New List dialog box.*

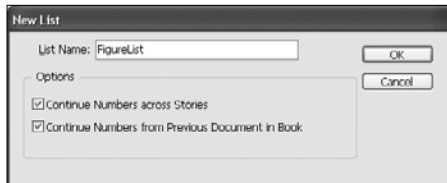
*Remember that each frame  
on a page is numbered in the  
order it was created—not its  
position on the page!*



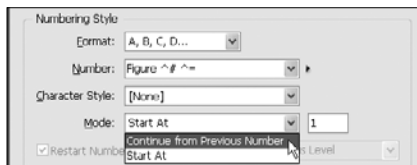
*To number these captions,  
we select the three text  
frames...*



*Choose New List from the  
List pop-up menu.*



*Enter a name for the list,  
and turn on Continue  
Numbers Across Stories.*



*Back in the Bullets and  
Numbering dialog box, we  
changed the Format and set  
Mode to Continue from  
Previous Number.*



*Each caption is  
automatically numbered...  
or, um, "lettered."*

- All the numbers in a single story (including multiple threaded text frames) are numbered at the same time—starting with the first frame in the thread—even if they're on different pages. For example, if you have a story that jumps from page 1 to page 5, and you have an unthreaded text frame on page 2, the numbered paragraphs on page 5 would be smaller than those on page 2 because InDesign is numbering the threaded story first.

Even stranger, if for some reason that story was instead threaded from page 5 to page 1, the numbering would start on page 2, then continue on page 5, then end on page 1.

- Paragraphs inside anchored text frames are numbered along with the story they're in. Let's say you're numbering your figures and some of your figure numbers are anchored inside a text story that spans from page 1 to 100—but one figure number is sitting in an unthreaded, unanchored text frame on page 2.

InDesign will number all 100 pages, including anchored frames, before it gets around to numbering page 2.

This means that you should either keep all your text frames anchored or keep them unanchored—mixing and matching will cause you heartache.

If you want a numbered list to continue from one document to the next in a book panel, your named list has to be present in all the documents—fortunately, the book panel’s Synchronize feature can copy named lists for you (see Chapter 8, “Long Documents”).

### **Removing Bullets and Numbering**

To remove bullets or numbering, select the paragraphs in question and then click once on the Bulleted List or Numbered List button in the Control panel (whichever is currently highlighted). Alternately, you could choose Remove Bullets or Remove Numbering from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu. Or you could display the Bullets and Numbering dialog box and choose None from the List Type pop-up menu. Whichever you choose, the bullets and numbers are gone, baby, gone.

### **Converting Bullets and Numbers to Normal Text**

To change the characters inserted by the Bullets and Numbering feature to normal text (*i.e.*, text you can select with the Type tool and format using InDesign’s typesetting features), select the paragraphs and choose Convert Numbering to Text or Convert Bullets to Text from the Context menu. You can also find this command in the Paragraph panel menu, the Control panel menu, and the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu. If you select a range of text that contains both bulleted and numbered paragraphs, choose Convert Bullets and Numbering to Text.

### **Bullets and Numbering in Paragraph Styles**

We’ve been talking about applying numbering or bullets directly to paragraphs as local formatting, but in the real world we’d virtually never do this. Instead, we’d first create a paragraph style that includes the bullet or numbering, and then apply that paragraph style to the paragraphs in question. We talk about styles below, but suffice it to say that we often work with two or three paragraph styles for each type of list. For example, in this book, we use a “numbered list” style that includes both numbering and a little Space After; and we use a “numbered list first” (which we apply to the first item in the list) that is based on “numbered list” but also includes a little Space Before. Plus, we use a “numbered list last” (which we apply to the last item in the list), which includes a little Space After.

## Styles

When you think about the text in your publication, chances are good you're thinking of each paragraph as being a representative of a particular kind of text. You're thinking, "That's a headline, that's a subhead, and that's a photo caption." Chances are also good that you're thinking of those paragraphs as having certain formatting attributes: font, size, leading, and indents.

That's what text styles do—they bundle all those attributes together so you can apply them to text with a single click. But there's more—if you then change your mind about the formatting, you can edit the style, and all the text with that style applied to it (that is, "tagged" with the style) is reformatted automatically.

Once you've created a text style for a specific kind of text, you'll never have to claw your way through the Character panel or Paragraph panel again. Unless, of course, you want to apply a local formatting override to your styled text, which you're always free to do.

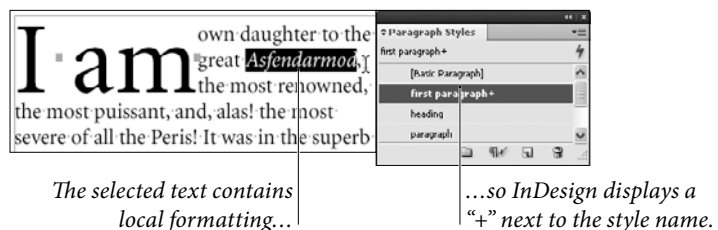
**Global versus Local Formatting.** We've been using the term "local formatting." What are we talking about? The key to understanding text styles is understanding the difference between style-based formatting and local formatting.

Local formatting is what you get when you select text and apply formatting directly, using the Character panel or the choices on the Type menu. When you apply formatting using text styles, on the other hand, you're applying "global" formatting (that is, formatting specified by the selected style).

If local formatting has been applied to text that has had a paragraph style applied to it, you'll see a "+" after the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel when the text is selected (see Figure 4-58).

**Plus What?** When you see that the text you've selected in a styled paragraph contains a local override, how can you tell what that local override is? If you have tool tips turned on, you can move the cursor over the style name, and InDesign will display a list of the

**FIGURE 4-58**  
Styles and  
Local Overrides



local overrides. Alternatively, you can choose New Paragraph Style from the Paragraph Styles panel menu. Look at the list of attributes in the Style Settings list at the bottom of the panel—it'll say "<stylename> + next: Same Style +" (where "<stylename>" is the name of the style applied to the paragraph) and a list of formatting. The items in the list are the local formatting. Click Cancel (or press Command-period/Esc) to close this dialog box without creating a new style.

**Incorrect Style Order.** Paragraph and character styles should appear in alphabetical order in their respective panels. Sometimes, though, the panels get confused and list them in a near-random order (probably the order in which you created the styles, which is silly). If that happens, just choose Sort by Name from the panel menu.

**Styles Are More than Formatting.** When you apply a style to a paragraph (which we call "tagging" a paragraph with a style), you're doing more than just applying the formatting defined by the style. You're telling InDesign what the paragraph is—not just what it looks like, but what role it has to play in your publication. Is the paragraph important? Is it an insignificant legal notice in type that's intentionally too small to read? The style says it all.

The most important thing to remember when you're creating and applying styles is that tagging a paragraph with a style creates a link between the paragraph and all other paragraphs tagged with that style, and between the paragraph and the definition of the style. Change the style's definition, and watch the formatting and behavior of the paragraphs tagged with that style change to match.

## Character Styles

By now, most of us are used to the idea of paragraph styles, which give us a way to apply multiple paragraph formatting attributes to an entire paragraph with a single action. (If you're not familiar with paragraph styles, we discuss them in the next section.) Character styles are just like paragraph styles, except that they can be applied to ranges of text smaller than an entire paragraph (and, obviously, they lack paragraph formatting features, such as alignment). Applying a character style to a text selection establishes a link between that text and the definition of the style—edit the style, and the formatting of the text changes.

Use character styles for any character formatting you apply over and over again. Run-in headings, drop caps, and special ornamental characters are all good candidates for character styles. Each time you use a character style, you're saving yourself several seconds you would have spent fiddling with settings in the Character panel or the

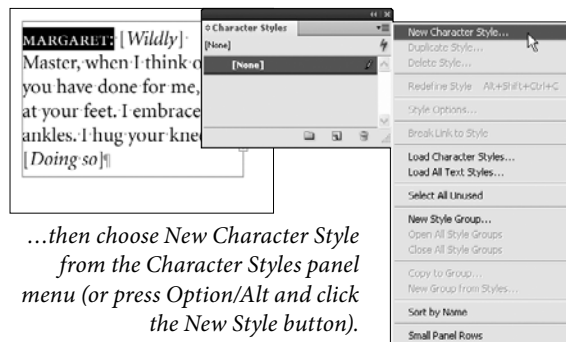
Type menu. It might not seem like much, but saving a few seconds several hundred times a day can add up.

**Creating Character Styles.** The easiest way to create a character style is to build it “by example” (see Figure 4-59).

1. Select some text that has the formatting you want.
2. Hold down Option/Alt and click the Create New Style button at the bottom of the Character Styles panel (or select New Character Style from the Character Styles panel menu). InDesign displays the New Character Style dialog box.
3. At this point, if you want to create a relationship between this style and another character style, you can choose that style from the Based On pop-up menu (see “Creating Parent-Child Style Relationships,” later in this chapter).

**FIGURE 4-59**  
**Creating a Character Style**

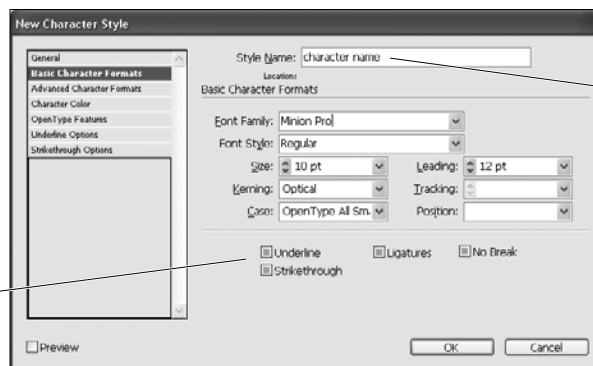
*To create a new character style, select a range of text that has the formatting you want...*



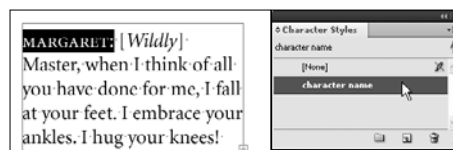
*...then choose New Character Style from the Character Styles panel menu (or press Option/Alt and click the New Style button).*

*InDesign defines a new character style based on the formatting of the selected text.*

*Note that InDesign does not define character formatting attributes that are the same as the default formatting of the surrounding text.*



*Enter a name for the style.*



*InDesign adds the new character style to the list of character styles, but it won't necessarily apply it to the selected text for you.*

4. Now give your style a name. You can also assign a keyboard shortcut to the character style—the key used must use a modifier key (Command, Ctrl, or Shift and a number key from the numeric keypad; NumLock must be on to define the shortcut).

When you create a character style, InDesign won't automatically apply the style to the text you selected in Step 1 unless you turn on the Apply Style to Selection checkbox in the General pane of the New Character Style dialog box. If you neglect to turn on this helpful checkbox, you'll have to apply the style to the selected text manually.

**QuarkXPress Users Beware:** In QuarkXPress, a character style always defines *all* the character formatting of the text—font, color, size, and other attributes. InDesign's character styles, however, are defined by *differences* between the character formatting of the selected text and the default character formatting of the surrounding text. In InDesign you can create a character style which, when applied to text, changes only its size and color, but retains all other underlying formatting.

This is actually a good thing—it means you can create character styles that affect some, but not all, of the attributes of a selection. It's different from the way that almost every other application defines character styles, and it takes some getting used to.

**Character Style Tips.** Here are a few things to keep in mind when defining character styles in InDesign.

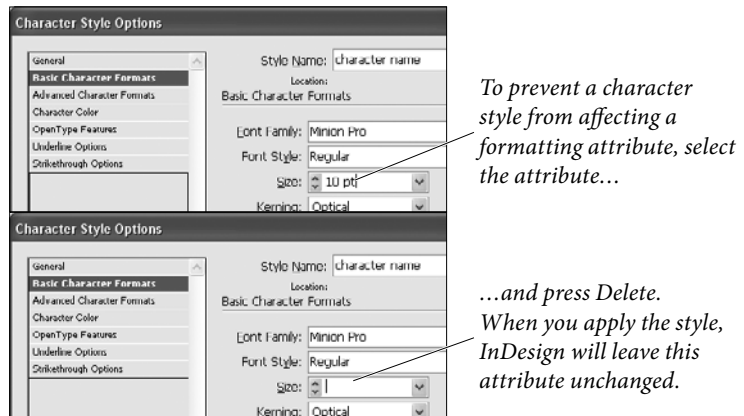
- If you're building a character style based on example text (as we suggested earlier), InDesign only picks up the formatting differences between the text you've selected and the paragraph style applied to the paragraph. For example, if the underlying paragraph style uses the font Minion Pro Italic, and the text you've selected uses the same font, the Font attribute of the character style will not be defined automatically. If you want the font to be part of the character style definition, you can add it once you have the New Character Style dialog box open (select the font from the Font Family pop-up menu in the Basic Character Formats pane).
- If you want your character style to be defined by *every* attribute of your text selection, you can use the CreateCharacterStyle script (see Chapter 12, "Scripting," for more on the example scripts that come with InDesign). Or you can create the char-



acter style from scratch (not from example text), specifying the font, size, color, leading, and all other formatting.

- Clicking the New Style button in the Character Styles panel creates a new character style based on whatever style was selected in the panel. It doesn't open a dialog box.
- If you want to “undefine” an attribute in a character style, select and delete the current value (see Figure 4-60).

**FIGURE 4-60**  
Undefining Attributes



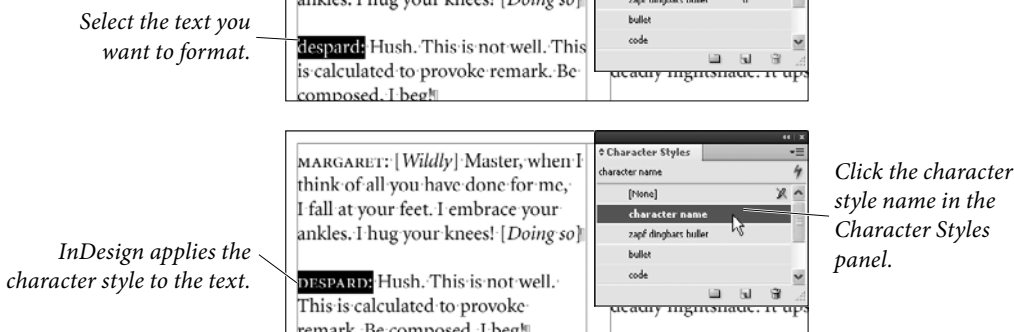
**Applying Character Styles.** To apply a character style, select some text and do any one of the following things (see Figure 4-61).

- Click the character style name in the Character Styles panel.
- Press the keyboard shortcut you assigned to the character style.
- Point at the style name in the Character Styles panel and choose Apply from the context menu.
- Press Command-Enter/Ctrl Enter to display the Quick Apply panel, type the name of the style, and then press Enter.

Again, applying a character style changes only those attributes that are defined in the style. This can cause grave confusion and hair-pulling if you're used to the way QuarkXPress does it. If you apply a character style that applies only the underline type style and color, for example—InDesign leaves all other character formatting as is.

To remove a character style from a text selection, click None in the Character Styles panel—this reverts the text back to the underlying formatting of the paragraph style. If you want to remove the character style and leave the formatting alone (convert it to local formatting), choose Break Link to Style from the panel menu. This is

**FIGURE 4-61**  
**Applying a  
 Character Style**



sometimes useful when you want some text to be formatted using the formatting of a given character style, but you don't want it linked to that style (because you know the style definition might change).

**Editing Character Styles.** The great thing about styles is that you can always change them later, and those changes ripple throughout your document. To edit a character style, you can use any or all of the following approaches—all of them display the Character Style Options dialog box, which you can use to change the attributes of the style.

- ▶ Hold down Command-Option-Shift/Ctrl-Alt-Shift and double-click the style name in the Character Styles panel.
- ▶ Point at the style you want to edit in the Character Styles panel and choose Edit from the context menu.
- ▶ Select the style and choose Style Options from the Character Styles panel menu.
- ▶ Double-click the style name in the Character Styles panel.

The first two approaches above do not apply the style; the latter two apply the style to the selected text, or to the document default formatting when no text is selected. Be aware of this difference as you go to edit a style—otherwise, you run the risk of accidentally applying the character style.

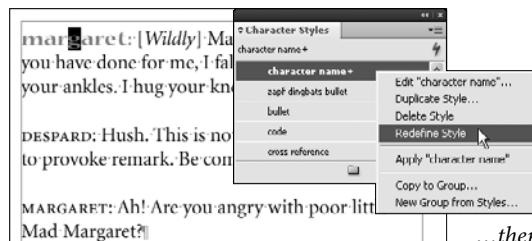
**Redefining Character Styles.** Editing a character style through the Character Style Options dialog box works fine, but is kind of boring. For quick changes, try this: Find some text tagged with the character style you want to redefine, then apply local formatting to it (change it

to the way you want the style to be defined). A “+” will appear next to the character style name in the Character Styles panel. Next, without deselecting the text, press Command-Option-Shift-C/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-C. InDesign automatically redefines the character style based on the selected text (see Figure 4-62).

Alternatively, you can select the text and choose **Redefine Style** from the Character Styles panel menu. Or you could point at the style name in the panel and choose **Redefine** from the context menu. But the keyboard shortcut is more fun.

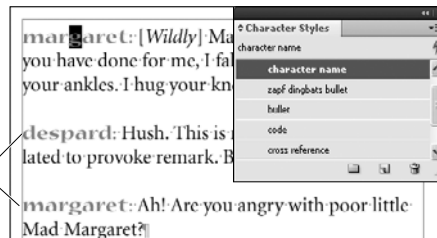
**FIGURE 4-62**  
**Redefining a**  
**Character Style**

*Apply local formatting to an instance of the character style you want to redefine...*



*...then choose **Redefine Style** from the Character Styles panel context menu.*

*InDesign updates the character style's definition based on the formatting of the selected text.*



**Deleting character styles.** To remove a character style, press Command-Shift-A/Ctrl-Shift-A to deselect everything (do this so that you don't accidentally apply the character style to text), then select the character style and choose **Delete Style** from the Character Styles panel menu (or click the **Delete Style** button in the panel).

InDesign displays the **Delete Character Style** dialog box, where you can select a replacement style (including no style). If you choose another character style, InDesign applies that character style to the text that had been formatted with the deleted style. If you choose no style, the text formatted with the style using the character style doesn't change appearance—it becomes local formatting.

## Paragraph Styles

Paragraph styles encapsulate all text formatting—both paragraph formatting and character formatting.

**Basic Style.** If you look at the Paragraph Styles panel, you'll always see a “Basic Paragraph” style. This is something like Word's (infamous) “Normal” style, and provides a kind of default style for all text.

We tend not to use this style, or base any other style on it, because we've found it can cause problems as we move text from document to document. In a nutshell: If you have defined Basic Paragraph Style one way, then you copy a paragraph tagged with that style to a new document, the text formatting changes because InDesign applies the new document's Basic Paragraph Style definition. That's usually not what you were hoping for.

**Creating Paragraph Styles.** The easiest way (in our opinion) to create a text style is to format an example paragraph using local formatting, then create a new style based on that paragraph (see Figure 4-63).

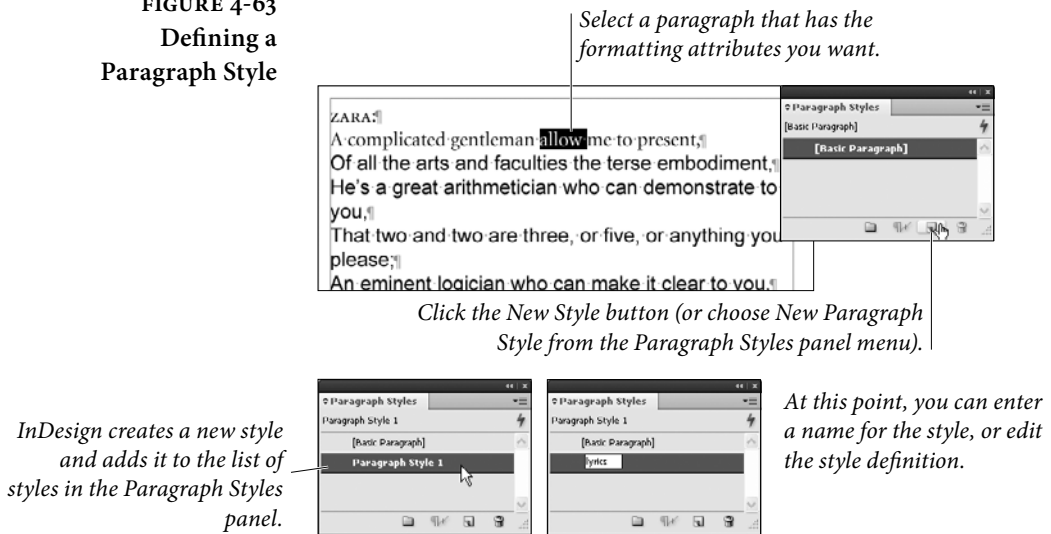
1. Select a formatted paragraph.
2. Display the Paragraph Styles panel, if it's not already visible (press Command/Ctrl-F11).
3. Choose New Paragraph Style from the Paragraph Style pop-up menu in the Control panel, or from the Paragraph Styles panel menu (or Option/Alt-click the New Style button) to open the New Paragraph Style dialog box.
4. Enter a name for the style in the Style Name field. You could leave the name set to the default, but we think it's better to enter a descriptive name—"heading 1" is quite a bit easier to remember than "Paragraph Style 6."
5. You can also assign a Next Style (see "Next Styles" later in this chapter) and a keyboard shortcut to the style—the shortcut must use a modifier key (Shift, Command/Ctrl, Option/Alt, or some combination of the above) and a number key from the numeric keypad (NumLock must be on to define the shortcut).
6. Turn on the Apply Style to Selection checkbox in the General pane of the New Paragraph Style dialog box. (Otherwise, the style won't be applied to the paragraph your text cursor is in.)
7. Click the OK button.

The style definition includes all the character and paragraph formatting applied to the first character in the selected "example" text.

If you work by the hour, you can also define a paragraph style from scratch, rather than basing your style on an example:

1. Choose "New Style" from the Paragraph Styles panel menu. InDesign displays the New Style dialog box.

**FIGURE 4-63**  
**Defining a Paragraph Style**



2. Work your way through the dialog box, setting the options as you want them for your new style. When everything looks the way you want it to, press Return/Enter to close the dialog box.

Creating a style this way is a little bit more awkward than simply basing a style on an example paragraph, but some people prefer it. We've met at least one person who likes setting tabs "without all that pesky text in the way."

**Applying Paragraph Styles.** To apply a paragraph style, select a paragraph or series of paragraphs (remember, you don't have to select the entire paragraph to apply paragraph formatting) and click a style name in the Paragraph Styles panel (see Figure 4-64). Alternatively, if you've defined a keyboard shortcut for the paragraph style, you can press the shortcut.

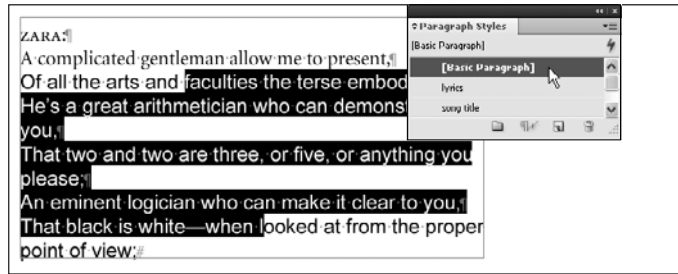
When you simply click a paragraph style to apply it, InDesign retains all the local formatting, so italic text remains italic. The one exception to this rule is when every character in the paragraph has local formatting—that stuff always gets removed.

To remove all local formatting as you apply a paragraph style, hold down Option/Alt as you click the paragraph style name. Any formatting applied using character styles is retained.

To remove all local formatting and remove formatting applied by character styles, hold down Option-Shift/Alt-Shift as you click the paragraph style name.

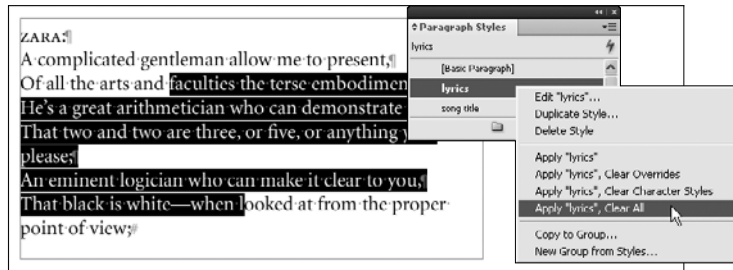
**FIGURE 4-64**  
**Applying a  
 Paragraph Style**

*Select the paragraphs you want to format (remember, you don't need to select the entire paragraph).*



*Click a style name in the Paragraph Styles panel, or use the Context menu.*

*InDesign applies the paragraph style to the selected paragraphs.*



Alternatively, you can use the Context menu in the Paragraph Styles panel to control which local formatting overrides you want to clear and/or keep.

To remove all local formatting (not including character styles) after you've applied a style, click the Clear Override button at the bottom of the Paragraph Styles panel. To remove all local character formatting, hold down Command/Ctrl as you click the button; to remove paragraph formatting, hold down Command-Shift/Ctrl-Shift as you click.

To remove a paragraph style from a text selection, choose Break Link to Style from the Paragraph Styles panel menu. Note that this does not change the formatting or the look of the selected paragraphs—it simply applies the formatting applied by the paragraph style as local formatting. As we said in the “Character Styles” section, you can think of this as breaking the link between the paragraph and the style definition.

**Editing Paragraph Styles.** To edit a paragraph style, you can use any or all of the following approaches—all of them display the Paragraph Style Options dialog box, which you can use to change the attributes of the paragraph style.

- Hold down Command-Option-Shift/Ctrl-Alt-Shift and double-click the paragraph style name in the Paragraph Styles panel.
- Point at the style you want to edit in the Paragraph Styles panel and choose Edit from the context menu.

- Select the style and choose Style Options from the Paragraph Styles panel menu.
- Double-click the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel.

The first two approaches above do not apply the style; the latter two apply the style to the selected text, or to the document default formatting when no text is selected. Be aware of this difference as you go to edit a style—accidentally setting the default font for a document to a style featuring hot pink dingbats can be a frustrating and embarrassing experience.

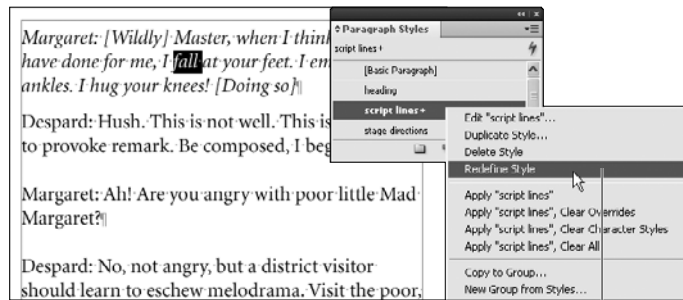
**Redefining Paragraph Styles.** The easiest way to *create* a paragraph style is to base the style on the formatting of an example paragraph. The easiest way to update the style definition? Do the same!

First, pick any paragraph tagged with the style you want to change, and apply local formatting to it (a “+” will appear next to the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel). Then choose **Redefine Style** from the Paragraph Styles panel menu (or press Command-Option-Shift-R/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-R, or use the Context menu). InDesign will redefine the style based on the selected text (see Figure 4-65).

**Next Style.** If you’re typing in InDesign, and the paragraph you’re in is tagged with the “Heading” style, you probably don’t want the

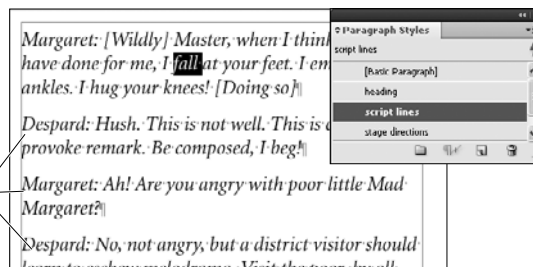
**FIGURE 4-65**  
**Redefining a Paragraph Style**

*Change the formatting of an example paragraph tagged with the paragraph style you want to change. A “+” appears next to the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel.*



*Choose Redefine Style from the Paragraph Styles panel menu.*

*InDesign updates all instances of the style with the formatting of the selected paragraph.*



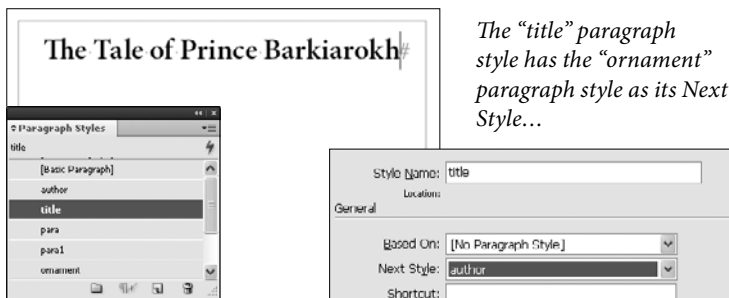
next paragraph to be tagged with “Heading” too, right? You can force InDesign to automatically change the subsequent paragraph style with the Next Style pop-up menu in the New Paragraph Style or Paragraph Style Options dialog box (see Figure 4-66). For example, if you want the subsequent paragraph to be “BodyText,” then choose “BodyText” from the Next Style pop-up menu.

Note that this only works if the insertion point is at the end of a paragraph when you press Return/Enter. If the insertion point is anywhere else, you’ll simply break that paragraph in two, and both new paragraphs will have the same style as the original one.

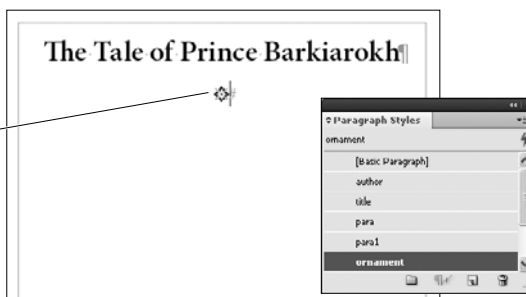
**Using Next Style on Existing Text.** What if you want to apply a sequence of paragraph styles to text you’ve already entered or imported? Select the range of text you want to format, then point at the first paragraph style you want to apply. Choose *Apply style name*

**FIGURE 4-66**  
Next Style

*In this example, we have set the Next Style option for each paragraph style to automatically apply the paragraph style we want when we press Return/Enter.*



*...which means that, when we press Return/Enter, InDesign switches to that style.*



*The “ornament” style, in turn, has the paragraph style named “author” as its next style, so pressing Return/Enter as we type text switches to the “author” style.*



*When we enter text following the “author” paragraph style, InDesign applies the “para1” style, which includes drop cap formatting.*

*All of these paragraph style assignments take place as we type, so we don’t have to reach for the Paragraph Styles panel.*



Then Next Style from the context menu (where *style name* is the name of the style you want to apply). InDesign applies the sequence of paragraph styles (see Figure 4-67).

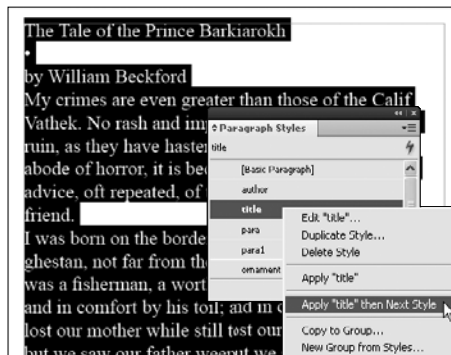
**Selecting Unused Paragraph Styles.** Choose Select All Unused from the Paragraph Styles panel menu to select all paragraph styles that are not applied to any text in the publication. Typically, the only reason you’d want to do this is to delete them all.

**Deleting Paragraph Styles.** To remove a paragraph style from your document, first deselect everything (press Command-Shift-A/Ctrl-Shift-A), then select the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel and choose Delete Styles from the panel’s menu (or click the Delete Style button at the bottom of the panel). InDesign deletes the style.

InDesign gives you a choice of how to handle paragraphs already tagged with that style. You can choose No Paragraph Style to convert the formatting applied by the style to local formatting, or you can choose to apply another style. If you want to replace one style with another without deleting the original style, use the Find/Change dialog box (see Chapter 3, “Text”).

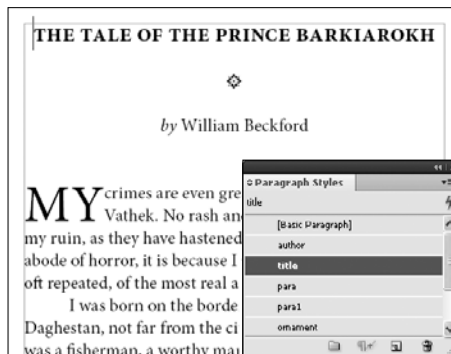
**FIGURE 4-67**  
**Applying**  
**Sequential Styles**

*Select the text you want to format. The first paragraph selected should be the start of the “chain” of styles you want to apply.*



*Choose Apply style name Then Next Style from the Context menu (where style name is the name of the style).*

*InDesign applies the styles, formatting each paragraph as specified by the Next Style setting of each style.*



*Note: You can also apply sequential styles by selecting a text frame with the Selection tool. When you do this, InDesign applies “next style” formatting to all of the text in the story, beginning with the first paragraph in the story.*

Paragraph Styles  
and Nested Styles

As we mentioned in the discussion earlier in this chapter, nested styles really come into their own when combined with paragraph styles. Remember all of the work we did to set up the nested styles in our example? Now imagine putting all of that formatting power into a paragraph style. Imagine applying it with a single mouse click. Again, we think this stuff is very cool (see Figure 4-68).

FIGURE 4-68  
Adding Nested Styles  
to a Paragraph Style

*This raw text has been dumped into the document from a spreadsheet or database. Formatting a catalog full of this text would be very tedious, even if you used nested styles as local formatting.*

*If you add the nested style definitions to a paragraph style, however, you can apply massive amounts of formatting with a single mouse click, as we've done here.*

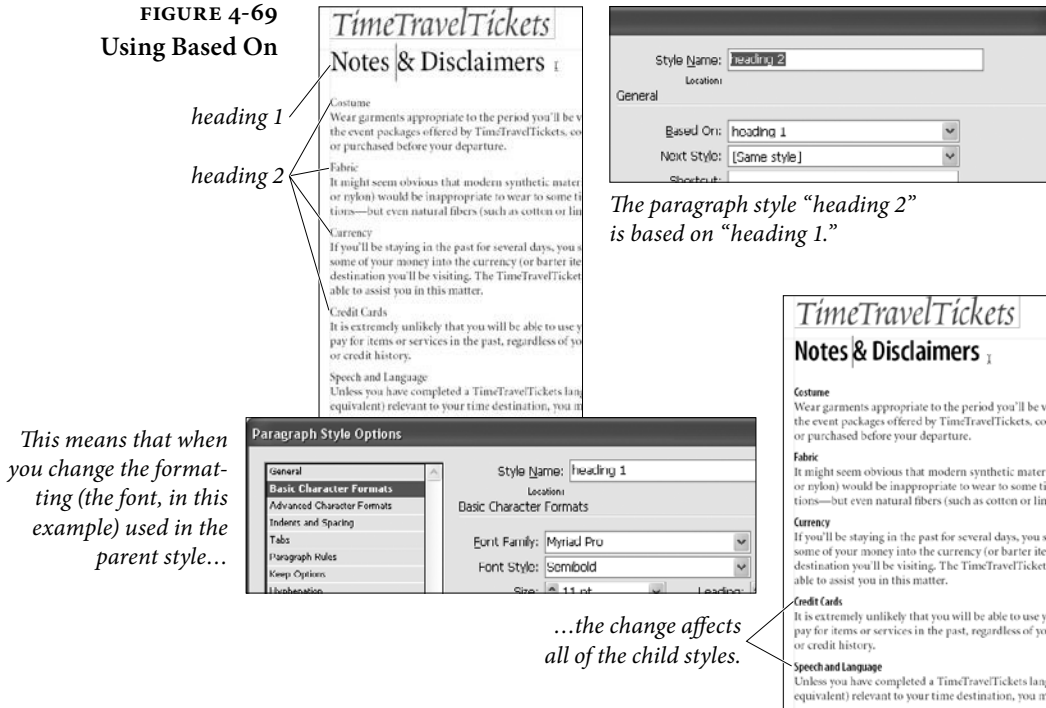


Creating Parent-Child  
Style Relationships

One powerful feature of InDesign's character and paragraph styles is the ability to base one style on another, also called parent-child relationships (see Figure 4-69). You can base a style on another one by choosing a style from the Based On pop-up menu in either the New Paragraph Style or the Paragraph Style Options dialog box (this works for either character or paragraph styles).

In this book, there are body text styles for paragraphs that follow headings, paragraphs that are in lists, and so on—but they're all based on one "parent" paragraph style. If we need to make the text size a half-point smaller, we could edit the parent style and the change would ripple throughout the book.

**FIGURE 4-69**  
Using Based On



When one style is based on another, InDesign keeps track of the differences between the base style (the “parent”) and the style based on it (the “child”). When you change the definition of the parent style, the changes will affect all of the attributes in the child style that are the same as the same attributes in the parent style.

**Reset to Base.** By the way, if your text cursor is in a paragraph when you create a new style, that paragraph’s style becomes the “based on” style and any local formatting applied to the paragraph appears as the differences in the new style. If you don’t want the local formatting, click the Reset to Base button. If you don’t want your new style to be based on anything, make sure the Based On pop-up menu is set to No Paragraph Style.

## Style Groups

Style Groups are a way to organize your paragraph and character styles. (They work with object styles and table styles, too, but that’s not what we’re talking about in this chapter.) Each style group is a folder into which you can put one or more styles. You can even nest one style group into another to create style hierarchies.

To create a style group, click the New Style Group button at the bottom of the Paragraph Styles or Character Styles panel (or choose the feature of the same name from the panel’s menu). If you already

know which of your styles you want in your group, you can add them while creating the group by first selecting them first (see Figure 4-70).

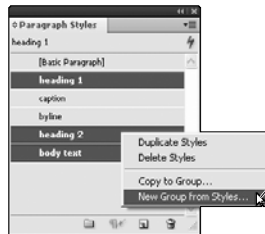
Once you've created a style group, you can move any style into it by dragging the style name in the panel into the group. It's very similar to working with folders in your operating system.

One of the coolest things about style groups is that you can have the same-named styles in more than one group. For example, you might make a "bodytext" paragraph style in a group called "Business Section" and another, differently-styled "bodytext" style in a group called "Entertainment Section". We're not saying you have to create templates like this, but it can be useful in certain situations.

To copy one or more selected styles to another group, choose Copy to Group from the panel menu, or Option/Alt-drag them over another folder.

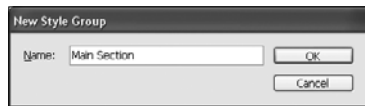
**What's Wrong with Style Groups?** At first, style groups sound great, especially if you have dozens of styles in your document. But you need to be careful with them. First, if do have same-named styles

**FIGURE 4-70**  
Creating Style Groups

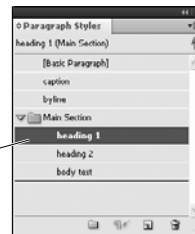


*To make a new style group with already-created styles, select the styles you want to include and choose New Group from Styles.*

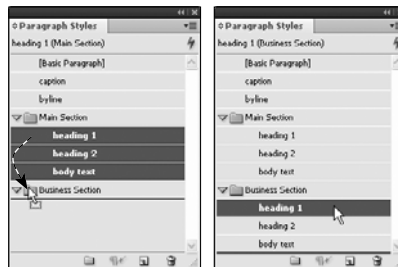
*InDesign displays the New Style Group dialog box. Enter a name for the group.*



*InDesign moves the styles into the style group.*



*You can duplicate styles from one group to another by holding down Option/Alt as you drag them from in the panel.*



*Quick Apply shows you both style name and style group.*

with different definitions, it can be confusing *which* bodytext or *which* heading you're applying. This calls for eternal vigilance. It helps if you apply styles with Quick Apply, because the Quick Apply window displays both the style name and what style group it's in.

The big problems appear if you need to export your documents as RTF (rich text format) for someone who is editing in Microsoft Word. Style groups will cause huge headaches because on export InDesign changes the style names (it adds the style group name). This isn't so bad except that when you reimport the RTF file, it's not smart enough to remap the style names back to the document's styles, so you end up with all your styles duplicated. It's horrible. We hope that Adobe will release a patch to fix this problem by the time you read this, but we're not holding our breath. Of course, in the meantime, it's a good excuse to get your editors to use InCopy instead.

---

## Copying Styles from Other Publications

One of the great things about character and paragraph styles is that you can use them to unify standard formatting across a range of publications—the chapters of this book, for example. While you can't define a “master” style sheet and have all publications get their style definitions from it (as you can in FrameMaker), you can easily copy styles from one InDesign publication to another.

- ▶ To copy character styles from another publication, choose Load Character Styles from the Character Styles panel menu. InDesign displays the Open a File dialog box. Locate and select the InDesign publication file containing the styles you want and click the Open button. InDesign copies the character styles from that publication into the current document.
- ▶ To copy paragraph styles from one publication to another choose Load Paragraph Styles from the Paragraph Styles panel menu.
- ▶ To import both character and paragraph styles from another publication, choose Load All Text Styles from the panel menu of the Character Styles panel or the Paragraph Styles panel.

When you import styles that have the same name as styles that already exist in the publication, InDesign overrides the attributes of the existing styles with the attributes of the incoming styles.

You can also move styles by copying text tagged with the styles you want from one publication and pasting it into another document

(or dragging a text frame from one document into another). If the styles do not exist in the document you've pasted the text into, InDesign adds them. If the styles already exist, InDesign overrides the style definitions in the incoming text with the style definitions of the existing styles.

You can also synchronize style sheets among all the documents in a book when you use the Book panel, which we talk about in Chapter 8, "Long Documents."

**Styles from imported text files.** When you import a Microsoft Word or RTF file that includes paragraph or character styles that don't exist in the InDesign publication, those styles get added to the Character Styles and Paragraph Styles panels. You can always tell one of these styles from those created in InDesign because the panels display a little gray floppy disk icon next to the style name.

**Libraries of Styles.** One of our favorite uses for libraries (see "Library panel" in Chapter 1, "Workspace") is to save paragraph and character styles that we use in multiple documents. In a small text frame, we type a few words (usually the name of the style) and then apply one or more styles to them. Then we drag the text frame into a library (select Library from the New submenu, under the File menu, if you haven't already made one) and double-click on the library thumbnail to give it a name and description. Later, when we need that style in some other document, we can open the library file, drag that text frame into our document, and then delete the text frame—the styles remain. Of course, this works with libraries of color swatches, too.

---

## Optical Margin Alignment

Ever since Gutenberg set out to print his Bible, typesetters have looked for ways to "balance" the edges of columns of text—particularly lines ending or beginning with punctuation. Because the eye doesn't "see" punctuation, it can sometimes appear that the left or right edges of some columns of type (especially justified type) are misaligned. Some other programs compensate for this problem by using a "hanging punctuation" feature, which pushes certain punctuation characters outside the text column. But there's more to making the edges of a column look even than just punctuation. Some characters can create a "ragged" look all by themselves—think of a "W," at the beginning of a line, for example.

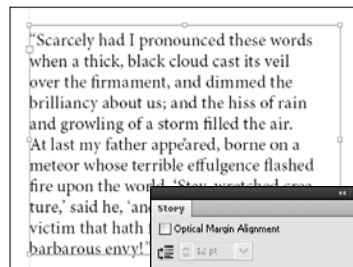
When you select an InDesign story (with either the Selection or the Type tool) and turn on the Optical Margin Alignment option in the Story panel (choose Story from the Type menu to display the Story panel), the program balances the edges of the columns based on the appearance of *all* of the characters at the beginning or end of the lines in the column. This adjustment makes the columns appear more even—even though it sometimes means that characters are extending *beyond* the edges of the column (see Figure 4-71).

The amount that InDesign “hangs” a character outside the text column depends on the setting you enter in the Base Size field of the Story panel (that’s the field with the icon that looks like it would make a drop cap). In general, you should enter the point size of your body text in this field.

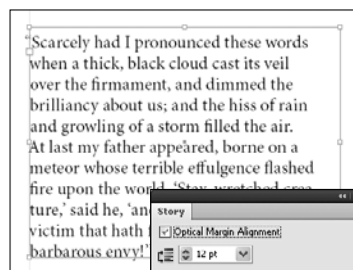
Unfortunately, it turns out that many designers don’t like the look of Optical Margin Alignment. It’s not that the feature is flawed; it’s that designers (especially younger folks) have become so accustomed to their type lining up with a particular guide or ruler that they think it’s wrong to have type inside or outside that (non-printing) line. Nevertheless, we encourage you to try turning it on and seeing how your readers like it—we think they’ll find the text easier to read.

**Ignore Optical Margin.** Even if you do like Optical Margin Alignment, there’s a good chance that you’ll occasionally find a paragraph

**FIGURE 4-71**  
**Optical Margin**  
**Alignment**

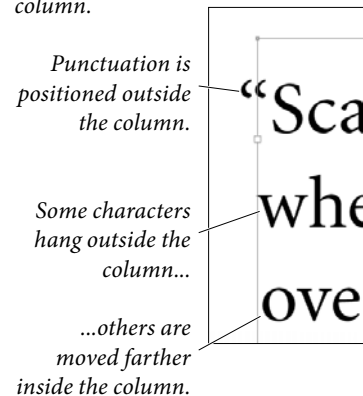


*Optical Margin Alignment off*



*Optical Margin Alignment on*

*In this close-up view, you can clearly see the way that InDesign adjusts the characters at the edge of the text column.*



or two that you wish it wouldn't apply to. For example, monospaced code listings should not be optically aligned—that defeats the purpose of using a monospaced font. Fortunately, you have the option to turn off Optical Margin Alignment on a paragraph by paragraph basis or in a paragraph style.

To turn it off for one or more selected paragraphs, choose Ignore Optical Margin from the Control panel or Paragraph panel menu. To disable it in a paragraph style, turn on the Ignore Optical Margin checkbox in the Indents and Spacing pane of the Paragraph Style Options dialog box.

---

## An Old Typesetter Never...

Late night. The sound of the espresso machine in the kitchen about to reach critical mass and melt down, destroying the office and civilization as we know it. The office is different, the equipment and the coffee are better, but we still seem to be up late at night setting type.

And, to tell you the truth, we're not sure we would have it any other way.



## INDEX



## A

\* (asterisks), 4  
 @ (at signs), 524  
 < > (angle brackets), 224, 233  
 ‘ (apostrophes), 39, 183, 186  
 ! (exclamation marks) on  
     yellow triangle icon, 473  
 - (hyphens) on Font menu, 237  
 “ (left double quotes), 39, 50, 183  
 ‘ (left single quotes), 39, 50  
 + (plus signs), 146, 301–302, 311  
 ? (question marks), 473  
 “ (quotation marks). *See*  
     quotation marks (“)  
 ” (right double quotes), 39, 50, 183  
 ’ (right single quotes), 39, 50  
 [ ] (square brackets), 85, 224, 257  
 ~ (tildes), 202  
 0 setline-width strokes, 343  
 1.1.1-style lists, 297  
 2-position rollovers, 719–720  
 2-sided printing, 671  
 3D Ribbon path text  
     option, 445, 446  
 5%–4000% views, 63

**A**

above line frames, 423. *See*  
     *also* inline frames  
 above line objects, 429, 430  
 Absolute Colorimetric  
     rendering intent, 631  
 absolute page numbering, 36, 646  
 absolute positioning, 576  
 accepting changes, 197  
 accessibility, 502–503, 523  
 accuracy of screen color. *See*  
     color management  
 accursed files, 75  
 Acrobat. *See* Adobe Acrobat;  
     PDF graphics and files  
 Acrobat layers, 736  
 actions for buttons, 716–718, 720

activated TOCs and indexes, 504  
 active publication windows, 8  
 ActiveWorkspace.xml file, 35  
 Actual Size 100% view, 63  
 AD, in text variables, 165  
 Add button (dictionaries), 202  
 Add Objects to Visible  
     State button, 722  
 Add Page button, 82, 95  
 Add Pages To pop-up menu, 41  
 Add path operation, 338, 339  
 Add Point tool, 17, 18, 21  
 Add to Autocorrect List  
     dialog box, 204  
 Add Untagged Items  
     command, 534  
 Added Text option, 53  
 AddGuides example  
     script, 114, 694  
 AddPoints example script, 694  
 Adjust Dashes command, 347–348  
 Adjust Gaps command,  
     347–348, 352  
 Adjust Scaling Percentage  
     option, 37, 571, 572, 582  
 Adjust Spacing Automatically...  
     option, 40–41  
 Adjust View Settings preferences  
     settings, 55–56  
 adjusting layouts, 99, 101–104  
 AdjustLayout example script, 694  
 Adobe Acrobat  
     Acrobat layers, 736  
     compatibility of PDF files, 501  
     Portable Document Format. *See*  
         PDF graphics and files  
     transparency and, 361  
 Adobe Bridge  
     launching, 4  
     metadata from, 176, 487, 10490  
     Mini Bridge, 6  
     revealing linked files in, 479  
     snippets in, 516

Adobe CMS system, 631  
 Adobe Connect, 735  
 Adobe Corporation, notes for, 433  
 Adobe Creative Suite, 486  
 Adobe Digital Editions, 522–523  
 Adobe Dreamweaver, 518  
 Adobe GoLive, 517  
 Adobe Illustrator. *See*  
     Illustrator graphics  
 Adobe In-RIP trapping option, 655  
 Adobe InCopy, 197, 199–200, 214  
 Adobe InDesign  
     *Breakthroughs*, 435  
     *Adobe InDesign CS5 Scripting*  
         *Guide and Tutorial*, 693, 699  
 Adobe Media Encoder, 723  
 Adobe Paragraph Composer,  
     264, 284, 289  
 Adobe PDF Preset pop-up  
     menu (export styles), 500  
 Adobe PDF Presets dialog  
     box, 513–515  
 Adobe PDF Print Engine,  
     361, 644, 661, 674  
 Adobe Photoshop. *See*  
     Photoshop graphics  
 Adobe RGB color model, 627, 628  
 Adobe Single Line Composer, 284  
 Adobe Version Cue, 479  
 Advanced pane (Print dialog  
     box), 662–664  
 Advanced Type Preferences  
     dialog box, 41–42  
 After Entry page number  
     option, 548  
 agates, 16  
 AI files. *See* Illustrator graphics  
 AICB setting (Illustrator), 456  
 AIF or AIFF files, 723  
 alert icon, 219, 220, 473  
 aliasing spot colors, 621  
 Align Away from Spine  
     option, 264

Align options, path text, 448  
 Align panel, 11, 593–594  
 Align Stroke... options, 344  
 Align to Baseline Grid button, 273  
 Align To Character tab stops, 269  
 Align Towards Spine option, 264  
 aligning objects  
   above-line objects, 429, 430  
   captions, 453  
   frame contents, 486  
   Gap tool, 20, 595–597  
   grids of objects, 592–593  
   multi-state objects, 721  
   overview, 593–594  
   Smart Guides, 117–119  
 aligning strokes, 344  
 aligning Tabs panel, 269  
 aligning text  
   to baseline grid, 272–275  
   captions, 453  
   custom baseline grids, 273  
   optical margin alignment, 318–320  
   paragraph formatting, 264  
   path text, 448  
   tabs and tab stops, 267–272  
 alignment buttons, Paragraph panel, 264  
 Alignment option, 486  
 AlignToPage example script, 694  
 all caps formatting, 250–251  
 All Pages field, 645  
 All Printer's Marks option, 651  
 Allow Fast Saves option (Word), 185  
 Allow Graphics and Groups to Resize option, 103  
 Allow Object-Level Display Settings feature, 466  
 Allow Pages to Shuffle feature, 84–86  
 Allow Ruler Guides to Move option, 103  
 Allow Selected Spread to Shuffle option, 84–86  
 Allow Split Footnotes option, 208, 209  
 Alpha Channel import option, 467  
 alpha channels, 467, 493–494  
 alpha index heads, 564

alphabetizing  
   cross-references, 558  
   index entries, 554  
   table of contents entries, 548–549  
 Alternates for Selection command, 158  
 alternating colors or patterns in tables, 409–410  
 Alternating Pattern menu, 410  
 Always Subset Fonts... option, 36  
 anchor markers, 424, 434–435  
 anchor points. *See* points  
 anchored boxes. *See* inline frames  
 Anchored Object Options dialog box, 430  
 anchored objects. *See also* inline frames  
   anchor markers, 424, 434–435  
   characteristics of, 422–424  
   creating, 430–435  
   drop caps, 435–436  
   hanging side heads, 436–437  
   locking position, 434  
   positioning, 431–434  
   Reference Point proxies, 432  
   removing, 429–430  
   selecting, 429–430  
   unanchoring, 429–430  
 wrapping text around, 435  
 anchors. *See* anchored objects; cross references; destinations (hyperlinks)  
 ancient typographers. *See also* Blatner, David; Bringhurst, Bob; Kvern, Olav Martin  
   0 setline-width and, 343  
   admiration of tables, 387  
   Block cursors, horrible memories of, 55  
   heavy sighing of, 422  
   late nights and, 235, 320  
   orphans and widows as banes of existence for, 290  
   remembering the days before color separation  
   previews, 671  
   typesetting purists, *vs.* typesetting realists, 288–289  
 angle brackets (< >), 224, 233

angles  
   drop shadows, 368  
   feathering, 375  
   halftone screens, 655–657  
 Animate pop-up menu, 729–730  
 animation  
   Animation panel settings, 728–730  
   AnimationEncyclopedia example script, 694  
   audio and video, 723–727  
   buttons and, 718, 730  
   complex, 730  
   customizing, 730  
   delaying, 731  
   exporting to Flash files, 739  
   fades, 730  
   Flash Professional, 732  
   hiding or showing objects, 730  
   importing presets, 732  
   looping, 732  
   motion presets, 728, 732  
   multiple objects, 730  
   order of, 731  
   overview, 727–728  
   in PDF files, 732  
   playing multiple effects at once, 731  
   previewing, 734–735  
   printing animated objects, 729  
   speed, 728  
   Timing panel, 729, 731–732  
   transparency and, 730  
 Animation action, 718  
 Animation panel, 728–730  
 AnimationEncyclopedia example script, 694  
 ANSI encoding, 233  
 anti-aliasing, 54, 57, 465, 496  
 apologies by authors, 279  
 apostrophes ('), 39, 183, 186  
 Appearance of Black Preferences dialog box, 58–59  
 Appearance Only option, 737  
 Appearance pop-up menu, 210  
 Apple ColorSync system, 624  
 Apple iTunes, 723  
 AppleScript  
   example scripts, 700  
   overview, 691–692  
 .applescript files, 692

- Application Bar, 3, 4, 5
- Application Built-In
  - trapping option, 655
- application defaults, 62
- Application Frame option, 2
- application-level
  - preferences, 35–36
- Apply Color button, 18, 27
- Apply Gradient button, 18, 27, 355
- Apply Leading to Entire
  - Paragraphs option, 40, 240
- Apply Master dialog box, 99
- Apply Master to Pages
  - command, 99
- Apply None button, 18, 27
- Apply Photoshop Clipping Path
  - option, 466–467, 469
- Apply Style to Selection
  - option, 304
- Apply to Content option,
  - 37, 571, 572
- Arabic numerals, 90, 92
- arithmetic in panel and
  - dialog box fields, 16
- Arrange Document
  - pop-up menu, 4
- arranging objects
  - aligning objects, 593–594, 694
  - contents of frames, 486
  - distributing objects, 594–597
  - distributing table rows
    - or columns, 393
  - pages in spreads, 83–86
  - path operations, 338
- arrays of objects (Grid
  - Mode), 592–593
- arrow keys, 46, 578
- arrowheads, 346–347
- arrows on tool icons, 18
- art boards in PDF or Illustrator
  - files, 469–470
- Artifact tag, 503, 534
- AS files, 692
- ascenders in path text, 446, 448
- Ascent baseline option,
  - 139–140, 426
- ASCII encoding, 233
- ASCII files, exporting, 498
- ASE files, 607
- Asian fonts, embedding, 510
- Assign Profiles dialog
  - box, 632, 633

- asterisks (\*), 4
- atomic regions, rasterizing, 679
- attributes
  - finding and replacing in
    - objects, 133–134
  - formatting, 218–221, 222
- Attributes panel, 11
- AU files, 723
- audio files
  - button actions for, 717
  - converting to importable
    - formats, 723
  - embedding in PDF
    - files, 504, 706
  - exporting interactive
    - documents, 737
  - exporting to Flash files, 739
  - importing and playing, 723
  - Media panel options, 726–727
  - posters, 726–727
  - previewing, 734–735
  - streaming audio, 725
- Author metadata, 452
- authors, bewildered, 598
- Auto-Collapse Icon
  - Panels option, 38
- Auto-Fit option, 485
- Auto Justified Tiling option, 650
- Auto leading, 241, 289, 426, 427
- Auto Page Number command, 92
- Auto Refresh Highlight
  - option, 680
- Auto-Show Hidden Panels
  - option, 38
- Autocorrect feature, 51–52,
  - 170, 203–204
- Autocorrect Preferences
  - dialog box, 51–52
- autoflow text flow, 68, 152, 153
- Autoflow text place icon, 68
- Automatic Document
  - Conversion option, 538
- automatic kerning, 244–246
- automatic page numbering,
  - 92–93, 539, 542–543
- automatic text flow, 68, 152, 153
- Automatic Tiling option, 650
- automatic trapping
  - methods, 622–623
- Automatically Adjust to Fit Marks
  - and Bleeds option, 670

- Automatically Use Correct
  - Optical Size option, 40
- Automation.com, 472
- autorenumbering, 539
- Available document status
  - icons, 539–540
- Average Downsample option, 506
- AVI files, 723, 725

## B

- background color. *See*
  - transparency
- Background Tasks panel, 27
- backing up workspace files, 35
- backslashes, 224, 225
- backward compatibility with
  - InDesign CS3 and 4, 515
- bafflement, layout changes
  - and, 103
- Balance Columns option, 139
- Balance Ragged Lines
  - option, 289–290
- bandages, ancient page
  - layout and, 17
- base colors, 619
- Based on Master pop-up menu, 97
- baseline grid
  - aligning paragraphs to, 272–275
  - custom baseline grids, 273
  - exporting PDF files, 504
  - hiding and displaying, 110, 119
  - overview, 47
  - printing, 647
  - Snap to Guides command, 119
- Baseline Grid preferences
  - settings, 47
- baseline JPEG images, 495
- Baseline Shift field, 47
- baselines of text
  - aligning path text, 446, 448
  - baseline shift, 42, 248–
    - 249, 255–256
  - first baseline position in
    - frames, 139–141
  - inline frames in first line
    - of text, 427–429
  - leading and, 240–241
- Basic Feather effect, 372–373
- Basic Graphics Frame
  - object style, 440

- Basic Paragraph style, 307–308  
 basic shapes, drawing, 322–323  
 Basic Text Frame object style, 440  
 battleship *Nadesico*, 355  
 BBEdit, 232  
 BC, in text variables, 165  
 BCE, in text variables, 165  
 Before Entry page number option, 548  
 behaviors of buttons, 716–718  
 Bermuda Triangle of page layout, 377  
 Between Entry and Page Number option, 548  
 between tags, finding text that is, 226, 229  
 Bevel effect, 371, 372  
 Beveled Join option, 345  
 Bezier paths, 323–324, 328–332  
 Bi-directional links, 474  
 bi-level images (monochrome), 464, 506, 659  
 Bicubic Downsample option, 506  
 BIG5 encoding, 233  
 binary files, 498  
 bitmap graphics  
   choices for file formats, 460  
   compression options, 505–507  
   display performance settings, 56  
   importing, 466–468  
   OPI replacement, 662–663  
   print settings, 658–660  
   raster images, 461–462  
   strengths and weaknesses of, 461–462  
   transparency and, 678  
 black and white art, 464, 506, 507, 659, 678  
 black background with white text, 247  
 black inks. *See also* inks  
   Appearance of Black preferences, 58–59  
   black point compensation setting, 632  
   managing color, 626  
   matching ink color on screen, 58–59, 635–636  
   overprinting, 59, 673  
   rich blacks, 58–59  
 black point compensation setting, 632  
 blank lines in imported data files, 528  
 blank pages, printing, 647  
 blank space between printed pages, 648  
 Blatner, David  
   “Blatner” as common household word, 201  
   cross references and tiny hearts, 177  
   difficulties with pronunciation, 629  
   distracting grids and, 120  
   drawing abilities of, 337  
   dreams about formatting and organizational goodness, 700  
   as driven batty by Smart Guides, 119  
   fondness for 16-point Georgia, 195  
   geometric art obsession, 702  
   idiosyncratic bookmarking behavior, 715  
   indexer’s eternal affection towards, 552  
   left-leaning yet flattening-far-right tendencies of, 678  
   love for eBooks, 521  
   as middle-of-the-road guy, 55  
   next-odd-page madness and, 543  
   as not getting out enough, 700  
   old style numeral disagreements with Ole, 260  
   other books by, 435, 464, 624  
   preferences for cubits, 45  
   as “select-challenged,” 107  
   side head self-experimentation and, 436  
   strong stomach of, save for runts, 286  
   tab tzarism of, 268  
   as taking “the hard way” because he can, 435  
   troubles with tables, 385  
   unsatisfied expectations for ragged lines, 289  
   as young pup publisher long ago, 705  
 Bleed Between Pages option, 668–670  
 Bleed fields (EPS exports), 498  
 bleed marks, 651, 666  
 Bleed Marks option, 651  
 Bleed setting, 653  
 bleeds  
   bleed areas, 71–72  
   bleed marks, 651, 666  
   booklets, 668–670  
   cropping PDF files to, 470  
   facing pages and, 86  
   JPEG exports, 496  
   print settings, 653  
 blending modes, 363–364, 376  
 blends (gradient fills). *See* gradients and gradient fills  
 blindness, overuse of effects and, 367  
 blinking cursors, 55, 196  
 Bloat effect, 695  
 Block cursor  
   achieving the DOS look, 196  
   horrible memories of, 55  
 blue-green highlights, kerning and tracking, 44  
 blurring  
   On Blur events, 716  
   drop shadows, 369, 370  
   text, 375–376  
 blurry animated objects, 729  
 BMPs. *See* bitmap graphics  
 bold type, 243  
 book covers, 81, 89  
 Book Page Numbering Options dialog box, 543  
 Book panel, 536, 539–540, 541. *See also* books  
 Booklet Type pop-up menu, 668  
 booklets, 667–671  
 bookmarks in PDF files, 504, 714–715  
 Bookmarks panel, 714–715  
 books  
   adding documents to, 537–538  
   Book panel, 536, 538  
   chapter numbering in, 543–544, 546  
   converting from previous versions, 538  
   creating, 536  
   document status icons, 539–540  
   editing documents in, 539  
   EPUB files, 545  
   exporting as PDF files, 545

- exporting for Web sites, 517–523
  - finding text in multiple
    - documents, 214
  - generating indexes for, 562–566
  - managing document
    - revisions, 538, 539
  - master documents, 541
  - moving documents in, 537
  - networked workgroup
    - document management, 540–541
  - organizing documents in, 537
  - overview, 536
  - page numbering in, 536, 539, 542–543
  - printing, 544–545
  - removing documents from, 538
  - renumbering pages in, 536, 539
  - section numbering in, 543
  - synchronizing documents, 536, 541–542
  - tables of contents. *See* tables of contents
  - tips and guidelines for, 538–539
  - updating chapter numbers, 543–544
  - borders
    - around cells, 402–404
    - around paragraphs, 399, 400
    - around table cells, 401–404
    - around tables, 409
  - Bottom vertical justification
    - method, 142, 143
  - bounding boxes
    - cropping PDF files to, 470
    - exporting EPS graphics with, 498
    - wrapping text around, 419
  - boxes
    - around cells, 402–404
    - around paragraphs, 399, 400
    - displaying graphics as, 465
    - printing graphics as, 660
  - braces ( { } ), 225
  - brackets, angle ( < > ), 233
  - brackets, square ( [ ] ), 85, 225, 257
  - Break Link to Style command, 441
  - BreakFrame example script, 694
  - breaking links
    - to files, 472–473
    - between text and style definitions, 305, 441
  - between text frames, 149, 150, 151
  - breaks
    - column breaks, 42, 290–292
    - entering, 156
    - inserting special characters, 155–156
    - page breaks, 42, 184, 290–292
    - preventing line breaks in text, 256
  - Brecht, Bertolt, 159
  - Bridge
    - launching, 4
    - metadata from, 487, 488
    - Mini Bridge, 6
    - revealing linked files in, 479
    - snippets in, 516
  - Bring Forward command, 122
  - Bring to Front command, 120–122
  - Bringhurst, Bob
    - “Bringhurst” as common household word, 201
    - pushing and pulling gap conundrums, 597
    - strong stomach of, save for runts, 286
    - tab tzarism of, 268
  - Broback, Steve, 62
  - brochures, 668–669
  - Brown, Russell, 363
  - browsers
    - browser-safe colors, 628
    - previewing interactive documents in, 734
  - bubble sort algorithm
    - example script, 696
  - bugs, updating merged data and, 530
  - building
    - indexes, 562–566
    - tables of contents, 550
  - built-in presets. *See* presets
  - bullets and bulleted lists
    - applying bullets, 293–295
    - converting bullets to normal text, 300
    - default characters, 294–295
    - exporting to XHTML, 518
    - finding glyphs, 228–230
    - formatting bullet characters, 293
  - hanging indent formatting, 266–267
  - lurking invisible fonts and, 262
  - named lists, 297–300
  - overview, 292–293
  - paragraph styles and, 300
  - positioning bullets, 293
  - removing bullets, 300
  - Bullets and Numbering
    - dialog box, 292–300
  - Bunting, Fred, 624
  - Burroughs, Edgar Rice, 159
  - business cards, 81
  - Butt cap option, 345
  - buttons
    - animation and, 730
    - Buttons panel, 716, 717
    - descriptions, 721
    - exported to Flash files, 739
    - exporting interactive documents, 737
    - hidden, 720
    - multi-state objects, 722
    - non-printing, 721
    - PDF or SWF file usage, 504, 715–721
    - previewing, 734–735
    - rollovers and states, 719–720
    - slide show navigation, 722
    - SWF file usage, 737–738
    - tooltips for, 721
    - video navigation points, 726
  - Buttons And Media option, 737
  - Buttons panel, 716, 717
  - Buzzword files, 189
- C**
- C, C#, C++, etc., 693
  - c shortcut, 451
  - calibrating devices, 624, 625
  - Cap Height option, 139–140, 426
  - Cap options, 344
  - capitalized words. *See also* case of characters
    - autocorrecting capitalization errors, 203–204
    - hyphenation, 286
    - index entries, 561
  - capitals. *See* case of characters
  - Caption Setup dialog box, 451

- captions  
 creating and updating, 451–454  
 exporting to HTML, 518  
 metadata, 452, 488  
 static, 453–454  
 text variables, 162, 164, 174–177  
 troubleshooting, 454
- carriage returns  
 as defining paragraphs, 262  
 importing text-only files  
   containing, 185, 186  
 leading and, 242  
 removing with GREP  
   methods, 229  
 showing hidden characters, 192  
 space before and after as  
   alternatives to, 272
- Cascade command, 8
- case of characters. *See also*  
 capitalized words  
 all caps formatting, 250–251  
 case sensitivity in find and  
   change options, 214  
 changing, 251–252  
 character formatting, 251–252  
 small caps formatting, 42,  
   247, 250–251, 258  
 text variable numbering, 164  
 tracking and, 247
- Case Sensitive option, 214
- catalogs of images, 695
- caterpillars, transformation  
 and, 598
- Caution icon, 473
- cave-dwelling EDLIN-  
 using uncles, 232
- CCITT compression, 506
- CE, in text variables, 165
- Cell Alignment setting, 187
- Cell Options dialog box,  
 395, 401–405
- Cell Proxy, 403, 404
- Cell Range setting, 187
- cell styles, 411–416
- Cell Styles panel, 414
- cells in tables  
 border strokes, 401–404  
 Cell Proxy, 403, 404  
 creating styles, 411–416  
 defined, 383, 384  
 diagonal lines, 407–408  
 entering tab characters, 388  
 fills or strokes, 401–410  
 gradients, 406–407  
 graphics in cells, 388, 390  
 height of cells, 387, 394–395  
 importing cell styles, 416  
 including cell styles in  
   table styles, 412  
 merging, 398–399  
 overriding cell styles, 415  
 overset text, 386  
 rotating, 399, 400  
 selecting cells, 387–388  
 selecting text in cells, 389  
 splitting, 399  
 width of cells, 387
- Center Content command,  
 484, 485
- Center in Frame option, 529
- center-justified paragraph  
 alignment, 264
- center of rotation, 23
- center of transformation,  
 568–569, 573
- center points of gradients, 355, 357
- Center vertical justification  
 method, 142, 143
- centered paragraph alignment, 264
- centered tab stops, 268–269
- centerfolds, 81
- centering contents in  
 frames, 484, 485
- Change All button, 200–201, 217
- Change Bars option, 54
- Change button, 200, 217
- Change Case command, 251–252
- Change Case option (text  
 variables), 164
- Change/Find button, 217
- Change Format Settings  
 dialog box, 218
- Change Object Format Options  
 dialog box, 133–134
- Change To field, 217
- change tracking. *See*  
 tracking changes
- Chapter Number text  
 variable, 161, 164
- chapter numbering in books,  
 161, 164, 543–544, 546
- character combinations (ligatures),  
 157, 212, 255, 257, 258
- character encoding  
 in tagged text, 233  
 in XML files, 533
- character formatting. *See also*  
 paragraph formatting  
 all caps formatting, 250–251  
 applying to all characters, 263  
 baseline shift, 248–249  
 case of characters, 251–252  
 Character panel, 11, 237  
 Control panel, 237  
 copying with Eyedropper  
   tool, 24, 25  
 filling characters, 262, 263  
 font selection, 237–239  
 fractions, 257–258  
 horizontal scaling, 248  
 kerning, 244–246  
 language assignment, 249–250  
 leading. *See* leading  
 ligatures, 255, 258  
 line breaks, preventing, 256  
 numerals, 258, 260–261  
 OpenType fonts and, 256–261  
 outlining, 262, 263  
 overview, 237  
 point size, 239–240  
 removing underlines  
   for spaces, 252  
 skewing, 249, 250  
 small caps formatting,  
   42, 247, 250–251  
 strikethrough formatting,  
   254–255  
 stroking characters, 262, 263  
 styles. *See* character styles  
 superscript and subscript,  
   42, 255–256, 259–260  
 swash characters, 258  
 titling characters, 258  
 tracking, 246–248  
 underlining, 252–253  
 vertical scaling, 248
- Character panel, 11, 237. *See*  
*also* character formatting
- character sets, 185, 224
- Character Settings preferences  
 settings, 41–42
- Character Style option, 206

- character styles
  - applying to text, 305–306
  - basing on example text, 303–304
  - basing on existing
    - styles, 314–315
  - bulleted lists, 293
  - changing fonts in, 262
  - Character Styles panel, 11, 303, 317
  - compared to QuarkXPress
    - character styles, 304
  - copying from other
    - publications, 317–318
  - creating, 303–304, 694
  - deleting attributes of, 305
  - deleting styles, 307
  - deleting text with specified
    - styles, 222
  - drop cap styles, 277
  - editing, 306
  - formatting attributes and, 304
  - hyperlinks, 708, 711
  - index styles, 565
  - interaction with paragraph
    - styles, 309, 310
  - nested styles, 276–283
  - numbered lists, 296
  - overview, 302–303
  - parent-child style
    - relationships, 314–315
  - Quick Apply feature, 448–451
  - redefining, 306–307
  - removing from text, 305, 309, 310
  - resetting to base styles, 315
  - saving in libraries, 318
  - style groups, 315–317
  - synchronizing in book
    - documents, 541–542
  - table of contents styles, 548
  - tagged text and, 188
- Character Styles panel, 11, 303, 317. *See also* character styles
- characterizing devices, 624, 625
- characters
  - applying colors to, 618
  - bullets, 293–295
  - converting text to outlines, 420–422, 679
  - escaping, 225
  - finding and replacing. *See* finding and replacing
  - finding and replacing
    - finding and replacing
  - formatting. *See* character formatting
  - formatting
    - hidden, 192
    - highlighting substituted glyphs, 43
  - importing text-only files, 185
  - inline frames as, 424
  - leading. *See* leading
  - nested style metacharacters, 278
  - special or symbol. *See* special characters
  - special characters
    - styles. *See* character styles
  - subsets of, in fonts, 36
  - tab leaders, 271–272
  - tables of contents leaders, 548
  - transparency flattener and, 679
  - Unicode values, 27
  - wildcard metacharacters, 216
- charts, 187
- Chavez, Conrad, 464, 624
- cheating software, 361
- Check In and Check Out
  - command, 479
- Check Links Before Opening
  - Document option, 60, 480
- Check Spelling panel, 11, 200–204. *See also* checking spelling
- checkerboard page icons, 675
- checking links, 60, 480
- checking spelling
  - adding words to dictionary, 201–202, 203
  - autocorrecting errors, 203–204
- Check Spelling panel, 11, 200–204
  - deleted text, 54
  - dictionary options, 49–51
  - dynamic spelling, 51, 203, 204
  - hyphenation points, 202
  - including note text, 52
  - language and character
    - formatting, 249–250
  - preferences, 51–52
  - removing words from
    - dictionary, 203–204
- child master spreads, 97, 98
- Chinese history and printing, 641
- Chinese text, 42
- Choke option in feathering, 372
- cicero override abbreviation, 16
- Cicero, placing orations by, 160
- circles
  - drawing, 22
  - red, with question
    - mark icon, 473
  - cleaning up imported
    - files, 185–186
- Clear Attributes Not Defined
  - by Style button or
    - command, 441
- Clear Overrides command, 415
- clearing overrides
  - layer visibility and, 471, 490
  - local text formatting, 309, 310, 700
  - master page items and, 101
  - object formatting, 440–441
  - paragraph style scripts, 700
  - table formatting, 415
- Clip Complex Regions option, 679
- Clipboard, 61, 221
- Clipboard Preferences
  - dialog box, 61
- clipping movie frames, 727
- Clipping Path dialog box, 491–492
- clipping paths
  - applying to imported
    - graphics, 466–467
  - compared to transparency, 491
  - converting to frames, 494
  - creating, 492–494
  - flattening methods, 674
  - importing EPS graphics
    - containing, 469
  - overview, 490–491
  - path operations compared
    - to, 338
  - removing, 494
  - selecting, 491–492
- close (>) angle brackets, 233
- close boxes and buttons, 3, 4
- Close Path button, 340
- closed paths, 331–332, 337, 340
- closing
  - open paths, 331–332
  - panels, 10
  - windows, 4, 9

CMYK color model. *See also* color management; color models  
 choosing color models, 601–602, 617  
 CMYK working space, 628–629, 632  
 color management policies, 630  
 color management settings, 627  
 composites and separations, 653–654  
 converting EPS images to, 497  
 converting RGB images to, 508  
 cross-rendering, 638  
 EPS files, 497, 640  
 JPEG files, 496  
 PDF, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, and PDF/X-4 files, 500, 638–640  
 Preserve CMYK Numbers option, 635, 637–638  
 presets, 627  
 Coated GRACoL setting, 629  
 coated papers, 625, 632  
 collaboration tools in networked workgroups, 540–541  
 Collapse All Footnotes command, 195  
 collapsing  
   footnotes, 195  
   layer display, 125  
   notes, 199  
   panels, 10  
 Collate option, 645  
 color  
   applying  
     Apply Color button, 18, 27  
     basic techniques, 618–619  
     behind paragraphs, 380–381  
     to cell borders, 403  
     to drop shadows, 368  
     to fills, 353–355, 603  
     to gaps in patterned strokes, 347, 348  
     to images, 618–619  
     to imported graphics, 494, 618–619  
     to objects or text, 27, 618–619  
     to page thumbnails, 80–81  
     to strokes, 603  
     in tables, 401–410  
     checking in Preflight, 684

color gamuts, 600, 607, 617, 631–632  
 color models. *See* color models; *names of specific color models (RGB, CMYK, etc.)*  
 Color panel. *See* Color panel  
 color separations. *See* color separations  
 color spectrum, 600  
 composite color, 653–654  
 compressed ranges of, 635–636  
 copying with Eyedropper tool, 24, 25  
 finding and replacing in objects, 133–134  
 gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills  
 image resolution and, 505  
 ink list, 601  
 Ink Manager. *See* Ink Manager  
 of interface elements  
   change bars, 54  
   change tracking markups, 184–185  
   composition problem highlights, 42–44  
   conditional text, 210  
   dynamic spelling, 51, 203, 204  
   grids, 47  
   guides, 48, 115–116  
   layers, 124, 127–128  
   menu items, 33  
   notes, 52  
   Story Editor window, 54, 195–196  
   text changes, 53  
 Kuler panel, 619  
 matching. *See* color management  
 mixed ink swatches, 610–613  
 named colors, 600–601  
 printed samples of, 625–626  
 printing. *See* printing  
 process colors. *See* process colors  
 profiles. *See* color profiles  
   proofs and proofing, 625–626, 634–636, 658–659  
   sets of, 619–620  
   spot colors. *See* spot colors  
   swatch libraries, 606

Swatches panel, 11, 603–607  
 synchronizing in book documents, 541–542  
 tints, 380–381, 602, 607, 608, 615, 656  
 transparency. *See* transparency  
 trapping. *See* trapping  
 unnamed colors, 600–601, 605, 615  
   visual perception, 600  
 color bars, 617, 652, 667  
 Color Burn transparency blending mode, 364  
 color composites, 653–654. *See also* color management  
 Color Conversion pop-up menu, 638  
 Color Dodge transparency blending mode, 364  
 color gamuts, 600, 607, 617, 631–632  
 Color Handling pop-up menu, 636–637  
 Color Label command, 80–81  
 color management. *See also* color profiles  
   additional resources for, 624  
   advanced settings, 631–632  
   bitmapped images and, 467–468  
   black inks, 58–59, 635–636  
   black point compensation setting, 632  
   color gamuts, 600, 607, 617, 631–632  
   compressed dynamic color range, 635–636  
   determining need for, 624–625  
   document profiles, 632–633  
   engines, 631  
   EPS graphics and, 497, 640  
   gnawing off legs and, 627  
   imported images and, 633–634  
   in-RIP trapping, 655  
   matching ink color on screen, 58–59, 635–636  
   monitor guidelines, 625  
   optimizing environment for viewing color, 625  
   out-of-gamut colors, 607, 617, 631–632  
   overview, 623–624, 626



- paper color, matching, 635–636
- PDF, PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3,
  - and PDF/X-4 files and, 471, 500, 508, 638–640
- policies, 629–630
- presets, 626–628
  - printed color samples, 625–626
  - printing, 636–638
  - proofing, 625–626, 634–636
  - rendering intents, 631–632
  - saving custom settings, 628
  - soft-proofing, 634–636
  - SWF files and, 738
  - synchronizing among Suite applications, 626
  - transparency blending modes and, 363–364, 676
  - working spaces, 628–629, 632–633
- Color Management pane (Print dialog box), 636–638, 662
- Color Management Policies
  - settings, 629–630
- color models
  - Adobe RGB, 627, 628
  - choosing, 601–602
  - CMYK. *See* CMYK color model
  - conversion errors between models, 602
  - LAB, 601, 617
  - RGB. *See* RGB color model
- Color panel
  - applying fills, 354
  - fill and stroke selectors, 602
  - overview, 616–617
  - shortcuts, 11, 616–617
- Color Picker, 617–618
- Color pop-up menu, 210, 653
- color printers, 626. *See also* color management
- color profiles
  - applying to imported images, 633–634
  - changing for single documents, 632–633
  - CMYK profiles, 628–629
  - color management
    - policies, 629–630
  - converting colors to new profiles, 632–633
  - default profiles, 628
  - device profiles, 623, 628
  - embedded profiles, 496, 633–634
  - exporting PDF files, 509, 638–640
  - ICC profiles, 509
  - output profiles, 509, 636–638
  - RGB profiles, 628–629
  - soft-proofing, 634–636
  - source and target profiles, 636–638
  - transparency and, 676
  - working spaces, 628–629, 632–633
- color separations
  - color management. *See* color management
  - halftone screen settings, 655–657
  - in-RIP separations, 654
  - previewing, 671–673
  - printing, 653–654
- Color setting (grids), 47
- Color Settings dialog box, 626–630
- color spaces
  - cross-rendering and, 638
  - displaying in Info panel, 28
  - exporting, 496
- color spectrum, 600
- color swatches. *See* swatches
- Color transparency
  - blending mode, 364
- ColorSync color management system, 624
- column guides
  - adjusting layouts and, 104
  - changing, 78, 111–112
  - defined, 108
  - manual text flow and, 153
  - preferences, 48–49
- columns in grids, 592–593
- columns in tables
  - adding, 395–397
  - alternating fills or strokes, 409–410
  - defined, 383
  - deleting, 397–398
  - distributing evenly, 393
  - resizing, 394–395
  - selecting, 387–388
  - table styles and, 414
  - width of, 387
- columns on pages
  - balancing automatically, 139
- column breaks, 42, 290–292
- column guides, 48–49, 78, 104, 108, 111–112, 153
- creating in text frames, 138–139
- gutter width, 111
- hyphenation and, 287
- importing Word/RTF files, 184
- layout adjustment
  - settings, 101–104
- leading and, 243
- master spread settings, 94
- New Document dialog box, 70, 71
- optical margin alignment, 318–320
- page layout options, 78
- spanning headlines for multiple columns, 143–145
- splitting, 143–145
- width of, 111–112, 138–139
- combining panels, 13
- comma-delimited (.csv) files, 523
- comments
  - deleting, 222
  - tracking changes by commenters, 197
- commercial printers. *See also* imagesetters and service providers
  - draw-downs, 610
  - sleep-talking habits of, 606
- Compatibility pop-up menu, 501
- complex path operations, 337–340
- complex stroke patterns, 345–346
- Compose Using options, 50
- Composite CMYK
  - option, 653–654
- composite color, printing, 653–654
- Composite Leave Unchanged
  - option, 654
- composite paths. *See* compound paths
- Composite RGB option, 653–654
- Composite RGB profile, 637

- composition
  - Adobe Paragraph
    - Composer, 284, 289
  - Adobe Single Line
    - Composer, 284
  - highlighting composition
    - problems, 42–44, 290
  - multi-line composition, 283–285
  - preferences, 42–45, 290
- Composition Preferences
  - dialog box, 42–45, 290
- compound paths (composite paths). *See also* outlines
  - converting text to paths, 420–422
  - converting to simple paths, 422
  - creating, 333
  - editing, 334
  - joining open paths, 332
  - path operations, 337–340
  - selecting portions of, 20
  - splitting, 334
- compressed dynamic color range, simulating, 635–636
- compressed PPDs, 643
- compression
  - exporting PDF files, 505–507
  - file formats and, 462
  - interactive document
    - settings, 737
  - resampling images, 505–506
  - in SWF files, 738–739
- Compression pop-up menu, 737
- compromise, transparency and, 675
- Compugraphics, 235
- computers
  - capacity to build indexes (in your dreams, maybe), 552
  - as objects to be thrown out of windows, 437
- Concepción, Anne-Marie, 435, 521
- concordances, 552
- condensed typefaces, 248
- condition sets, 210–212
- conditional images, 721
- conditional text, 209–213
- Conditional Text panel, 210–212
- confidence, scripts and, 691
- Configure Plug-Ins dialog box (Extension Manager), 68
- conflicting text variables, 168
- connect-the-dots puzzles, 321, 324
- consecutive hyphens, 286
- consecutive imposition, 668–669
- Constrain Proportions
  - options, 649
- contact sheets, 460
- container selections, 109
- content. *See* text
- Content Grabber
  - moving contents, 19, 104, 105
  - panning images, 483
  - rotating objects, 583
  - selecting graphics, 481–482
- content selections, 109
- context menus
  - bizarre aversions to, 466
  - using, 29
- contextual ligatures, 258
- Continue from Previous
  - Document option, 543
- Continue on Next Even
  - Page option, 543
- Continue on Next Odd
  - Page option, 543
- continuing numbers, 295
- contouring text wrap, 418–419
- control handles (direction lines)
  - converting points, 326, 328
  - corner and curve points, 326
  - deleting, 329
  - illustrated, 322
  - manipulating and retracting, 329
  - overview, 325, 326
  - tips for working with, 329
- Control panel
  - applying formatting
    - with, 237, 263
  - basic transforming
    - techniques, 568–576
  - customizing options on, 34
  - docking problems, 14–15
  - illustrated, 3
  - moving objects with, 576
  - Proxy, 568–569, 572, 573
  - rotating objects with, 584, 585
  - scaling objects with, 580–581
  - shortcuts, 11
  - table controls in, 390
- Convert All Strokes to
  - Outlines option, 679
- Convert All Text to Outlines
  - option, 679
- Convert Clipping Path to
  - Frame command, 494
- Convert from Button
  - command, 716
- Convert Object to a Button
  - command, 716
- Convert Point operations, 340
- Convert Point tool, 18, 21, 326, 328
- Convert Quotes option (Use Typographer's Quotes option), 39, 183, 188
- Convert Shape operations, 340
- Convert Table to Text dialog
  - box, 386, 387
- Convert Tables To option, 183
- Convert Text to Table dialog
  - box, 384, 386
- Convert to Beveled-Corner
  - Rectangle button, 340
- Convert to Column Breaks
  - option, 184
- Convert to Destination (Preserve Numbers) option, 508, 638
- Convert to Destination options (PDF export), 508
- Convert to Ellipse button, 340
- Convert to Header Rows
  - and Convert to Footer
    - Rows commands, 391
- Convert to Inverse-Rounded-Corner Rectangle button, 340
- Convert to Line button, 340
- Convert to Note command, 199
- Convert to Polygon button, 340
- Convert to Profile dialog
  - box, 632–633
- Convert to Rectangle
  - operation, 340
- Convert to Rounded-Corner
  - Rectangle button, 340
- Convert to Text command, 199
- Convert to Triangle button, 340
- Convert to Vertical or Horizontal
  - Line button, 340
- Convert URLs to Hyperlinks
  - dialog box, 709
- Convert Variable to Text
  - command, 169

- converting
  - clipping paths to frames, 494
  - color management working spaces, 508, 629–630
  - colors to different models, 602
  - colors to new profiles, 632–633
  - compound paths to
    - simple paths, 422
  - corners to rounded
    - edges, 341–342
  - frames to text frames,
    - 39–40, 136
  - multi-state objects to
    - independent elements, 723
  - notes to text, 199
  - objects to buttons, 715–716
  - older booked documents, 538
  - older InDesign files, 74
  - page breaks to column
    - breaks, 184
  - PageMaker files, 74, 75
  - paths to motion paths, 730
  - point operations, 340
  - points, 18, 21, 326, 328
  - QuarkXPress files, 74–75
  - quotation marks to
    - typographer's quotes, 39, 183, 188
  - shapes to text frames, 136
  - spot colors and process
    - colors, 613, 621
  - strokes to outlines, 679
  - table rows to headers or
    - footers, 390–392
  - tables in Word files, 183
  - tables to text, 386, 387
  - text to notes, 199
  - text to outlines, 420–422, 679
  - text to tables, 384, 386
  - text variable instances to
    - text, 168, 169–170
  - URLs to hyperlinks, 708–709
  - video formats, 723
- coordinates in Transform and
  - Control panels, 38, 573–574
- Copies field, 645
- Copy Fonts option, 686–687
- Copy Full Path command, 479
- “copy” in style names, 188
- Copy Link(s) To command, 479
- Copy PDF to Clipboard/Preserve
  - PDF Data At Quit option, 61
- Copy Platform Style Path
  - option, 479, 524
- copyfitting text in multiple
  - windows, 8–9
- copying
  - dragging and dropping
    - text, 192–193
  - duplicating while
    - transforming, 574
  - duplicating with Step
    - and Repeat, 578
  - effects, 376
  - file paths, 479
  - formatting with Eyedropper
    - tool, 24, 25
  - importing graphic files, 456
  - layers between publications, 128
  - linked files, 479
  - linked text frames, 150, 151
  - master spreads, 95, 96–97
  - metadata from files, 488
  - objects, 335
  - objects into states, 722
  - objects to other layers, 126, 128
  - pages and page spreads, 83
  - pathnames, 524
  - PDF files, permissions and, 513
  - PDF formats on Clipboard, 61
  - ruler guides, 117
  - stroke styles, 352, 353
  - styles between publications,
    - 317–318
  - styles to style groups, 316
  - swatches, 616
  - tables from other programs, 385
  - text variables, 166–168
- Copyright metadata, 452
- CorelDraw files, 477
- Corner Options dialog
  - box, 22, 341–342
- corner points
  - control handles. *See*
    - control handles
  - converting to curve
    - points, 326, 328
  - corner options and, 341–342
  - drawing paths with Pen
    - tool, 327–328
  - drawing paths with Pencil
    - tool, 326–327
  - overview, 325
- point conversion operations, 340
  - stroke join options, 344, 345
- CornerEffects example script, 694
- corners
  - adjusting dotted or dashed
    - line corners, 347–348
  - adjustments on strokes, 352
  - corner effects, 22, 341–342
  - feather corner options, 372
  - join options, 344, 345
  - miter limit, 344–345
- Corners pop-up, 347–348
- corrupt data, removing
  - from files, 515
- corrupted files, 77
- covers, 81, 86, 646
- crash recovery, 77
- Create Acrobat Layers
  - option, 503, 545, 736
- Create Guides dialog box, 112
- Create JDF File Using
  - Acrobat option, 511
- Create Links When Placing
  - Text and Spreadsheet Files
    - option, 60, 189, 480
- Create Merged Document
  - command and dialog
    - box, 526, 528–529
- Create New Hyperlink button, 711
- Create Outlines command, 421
- Create Package Folder
  - dialog box, 686–687
- Create PDF Bookmarks
  - checkbox, 714
- Create Tagged PDF option,
  - 502–503, 736
- CreateCharacterStyle example
  - script, 304, 694
- Creation Date metadata, 452
- Creation Date text
  - variable, 161, 164
- Creative Suite, 486
- creativity, scripting and,
  - 689, 696–697
- Creep option, 668–669
- Creo Scitext RIPs, 676
- crimes, glyph scaling and, 289
- Crop Amount option, 486

crop marks  
 booklets, 670  
 CropMarks example script, 695  
 customizing, 667  
 printing, 651  
 turning on, 651  
 Crop Marks option, 651  
 Crop Pages dialog box  
 (Acrobat), 470  
 Crop To setting, 470  
 CropMarks example script, 695  
 cropping. *See also* clipping  
 paths; crop marks  
 exporting PDF files and, 507  
 importing PDF graphics  
 and, 470  
 movie frames, 727  
 Page tool and, 20  
 during placing, 486  
 printing crop marks, 651  
 retaining after relinking, 480  
 cross-platform scripting, 691  
 Cross Reference Formats  
 dialog box, 179  
 cross references  
 to document sections, 177  
 index, 557–559  
 text variables and, 162  
 cross-rendering CMYK  
 images, 638  
 crotchety graphics formats, 461  
 CSS definitions, 517, 518  
 CSS tags, 520  
 CSV files, 523  
 Cthulhu (elder evil space  
 god), 294, 376  
 cubits, 45  
 curled page effect, 738  
 curly quotes (typesetters'  
 quotes), 39, 183, 186, 188  
 current appearance (animated  
 objects), 729  
 Current Page option, 554  
 Cursor Key field, 46, 578  
 cursors and cursor icons  
 behavior in story  
 windows, 54–55  
 blinking cursors, madness  
 and, 196  
 Block cursor, 55, 196  
 drag and drop icons, 192–193  
 dragging place icons, 458–459  
 graphic place icons, 67, 68

link icons, 148  
 moving cursor through  
 text, 190–192  
 multiple-file place icons, 68  
 place icons (place guns),  
 67, 68, 458–459  
 preview images for, 37–38  
 shadow cursors, 6  
 Smart Cursors, 38, 117  
 Story Editor display, 196  
 table editing cursors, 389  
 text flow icons, 68, 152–154  
 text insertion point, 147  
 tools and, 18  
 unlink icons, 148  
 curve points  
 control handles. *See*  
 control handles  
 converting to corner  
 points, 326, 328  
 drawing paths with, 326–328  
 properties, 325  
 curves of line segments  
 adjusting, 329–330  
 smooth point operations, 340  
 symmetrical point  
 operations, 340  
 custom baseline grids, 273  
 Custom Cross-Reference  
 setting, 558  
 Custom Measurement  
 Unit dialog box, 6  
 Custom soft-proofing setting, 634  
 Custom Text text variable,  
 161, 164, 171  
 Custom Tracking/Kerning  
 option, 44  
 Customize Control Panel  
 dialog box, 34  
 Customize Style Import  
 option, 185  
 customizing  
 animation, 730  
 baseline grids, 273  
 color management settings, 628  
 Control panel options, 34  
 cross-references, 558  
 measurement units, 6  
 menus, 32–33  
 objects or text. *See* editing  
 printer's marks. *See*  
 printer's marks  
 style imports, 185

text variables, 164, 166  
 time and date stamps, 170  
 tracking and kerning, 44  
 CutContents example  
 script, 700–702  
 cute wool-producing animals  
 that spit, 557  
 cutting  
 CutContents script, 700–702  
 points and paths in two, 26

## D

Daisy Consortium, 523  
 damaged files, 77  
 Dark Ages of page layout,  
 sighing and, 422  
 Darken transparency  
 blending mode, 364  
 Dashboard, 397*n*  
 dashed strokes, 345, 346,  
 347–348, 350  
 dashes, 156. *See also* hyphenation  
 data fields, 523–524, 530  
 data files  
 importing, 186–188  
 merging into InDesign  
 documents, 516–527  
 setup, 523–524  
 updating merged data, 529–530  
 Data Format setting, 498, 662  
 data merge  
 blank lines in data file, 528  
 data file setup, 523–524  
 importing images with text, 524  
 importing indexing with  
 text, 560–561  
 limiting number of records, 529  
 master pages and, 526  
 merging data into InDesign  
 documents, 516–527  
 multiple records on pages, 528  
 overview, 523  
 template setup, 524–526  
 updating merged data, 529–530  
 Data Merge panel, 523–530  
 Datacolor Spyder, 625  
 DataLinker, 523  
 dates in text variables,  
 161–162, 164, 165, 170  
 days in text variables, 165  
 DCS files and workflows, 462, 676  
 DDE/COM, 693

- deadly Word features, 185
- debugging scripts, 692
- Decimal Places option, 187
- decimal tabs and tab stops, 269
- Default Fill/Stroke icon, 18
- Default View Settings options, 55
- defaults
  - application defaults, 62
  - Auto leading setting, 241
  - bullet characters, 294–295
  - character styles, 306
  - color management, 626–628
  - document defaults, 62
  - fills and strokes, 18
  - flattener presets, 680
  - keyboard shortcuts, 2, 30
  - new documents and, 73
  - numeral formatting, 261
  - object styles, 440
  - paragraph styles, 311
  - reverting to original defaults, 62
  - setting, 62
  - text variables, 163
  - view settings, 55
- Define Document Presets
  - dialog box, 72–73
- defining
  - keyboard shortcuts, 29–32
  - presets, 72–73, 664–665
  - stroke styles, 350–352
  - text variables, 167
- Delete All Guides command, 117
- Delete End Punctuation option
  - (text variables), 164
- Delete Layer button or
  - command, 125, 129
- Delete Master Spread
  - command, 99
- Delete Note button, 199
- Delete Point tool, 18, 21
- Delete Style button, 441
- Delete Swatch dialog box, 615
- Delete Text Variables
  - dialog box, 168
- Delete Type on a Path
  - command, 448
- Delete Unused Layers
  - command, 129
- Deleted Text option, 53
- deleting. *See also* removing
  - anchored objects, 429–430
  - blank lines in data, 528–529
  - bullets or numbers, 300
  - character styles, 307
  - clipping paths, 494
  - colors, 614–615
  - conditions from text, 210
  - control handles, 329
  - corner effects, 341
  - corrupt data from files, 515
  - documents from books, 538
  - effects, 376
  - fill or stroke colors, 354–355
  - frame-fitting options, 485
  - hyperlinks, 713
  - index entries, 561
  - inline frames, 429–430
  - items from Quick Apply
    - list, 450, 451
  - items in frames, 700–702
  - keyboard shortcuts, 30
  - layers, 125, 129
  - line segments, 22
  - linked text frames, 149–150, 151
  - master spreads, 99–100
  - notes in stories, 199
  - object styles, 441–442
  - objects, 132, 700–702
  - optical margin adjustments, 319–320
  - pages, 79
  - paragraph styles, 313
  - PDF export presets, 514–515
  - points from paths, 18, 22, 330
  - preference settings, 62
  - print presets, 666
  - punctuation in text
    - variables, 164
  - ruler guides, 117
  - scripts accidentally, 697
  - shapes after path operations, 338
  - stroke styles, 352
  - tab stops, 270
  - table columns or rows, 397–398
  - tables, 397–398
  - text from paths, 448
  - text variables, 168
  - text with specified styles, 222
  - tracking changes to text, 53
  - unplaced graphics from
    - cursor, 459
    - unused layers, 129
    - unwanted color swatches, 515
    - words from dictionaries, 203–204
- delimiters, 384, 386, 523
- Delphi, 693
- denominator characters, 260
- descenders, 253, 446, 448
- Description metadata, 452
- Description panel (File Info
  - dialog box), 488
- descriptions
  - buttons, 721
  - files, 488
  - metadata, 452
- deselecting objects, 106
- A Designer's Guide to Adobe InDesign and XML*, 534
- destinations (buttons), 716
- destinations (cross references), 177
- destinations (hyperlinks)
  - button action anchors, 716
  - editing, 712–713
  - shared, 710
  - types of, 709–712
- Detach All Objects from
  - Master command, 101
- Detach Selection from Master
  - command, 101
- detecting edges for clipping
  - paths, 493
- device-independent
  - PostScript files, 643
- device profiles
  - applying to imported
    - images, 633–634
  - CMYK profiles, 628–629
  - color management
    - policies, 629–630
- default profiles, 628
- defined, 623
- embedded profiles, 633–634
- RGB profiles, 628–629
- soft-proofing, 634–636
- dfont packages, 688
- diagonal lines
  - in cell styles, 412
  - in tables, 407–408
- dialog boxes, 16. *See also names of specific dialog boxes*

- dictionaries. *See also*  
     checking spelling  
     adding words to, 201–202, 203  
     dictionary-style headers, 172, 175  
     importing text-only files, 186  
     language and character formatting, 249–250  
     merging with imported documents, 50  
     preferences, 49–51  
 Dictionary Preferences  
     dialog box, 49–51  
 dictionary-style headers, 172, 175  
 didots, 16  
 Diffused feather corner  
     option, 372–373  
 Digital Editions, 522–523  
 Digital Editions Export  
     Options dialog box, 522  
 Digital Rights Management, 511–512  
 digits. *See* numbers  
 Dimensions Include Stroke  
     Weight option, 575  
 dimensions, resizing to guides, 50  
 Direct Selection tool  
     overview, 20, 104–105  
     selecting frames and contents, 481–483  
     selecting text for formatting, 236  
     shortcuts, 18  
     subselecting objects, 107–108, 131  
 direct to plate printing, 625  
 direction  
     drawn paths, 324–325  
     motion paths, 730  
 direction lines. *See* control  
     handles (direction lines)  
 Directional Feather effect, 373–375  
 directories. *See* folders  
 disaster recovery, 77  
 discretionary hyphen  
     characters, 287  
 discretionary ligatures, 257  
 Display All Blacks Accurately  
     option, 58  
 Display All Blacks As Rich  
     Blacks option, 59  
 Display Item Information  
     button, 28  
     Display Performance Preferences  
         dialog box, 55–58  
     display type, 243  
     displaying  
         animated objects, 730  
         baseline grid, 110  
         black inks, 58–59  
         changed text, 53  
         conditional text, 210  
         controls during interactive feature play, 725  
         fields, 717  
         glyphs and characters, 158  
         guides and grids, 47–49, 110, 128  
         hidden characters, 163, 192  
         hidden menu items, 33  
         hidden panels, 38  
         hidden tools, 18  
         hyperlinks, 713  
         import options, 181, 183  
         interactive documents  
             full-screen, 737  
         kerning amounts, 246  
         keyboard shortcut list, 30, 32  
         layers, 125, 128  
         library item information, 28  
         links between text frames, 136, 146–147  
         metadata, 174–177  
         multiple windows, 7–9  
         nested object's offset, 576  
         notes, 199  
         page views, 4–5  
         panels as icons, 38  
         prefixes or suffixes, 206  
         problem tags, 188–189  
         rotating page view, 89–90  
         Story Editor preferences, 54–55  
         subsets of libraries, 28  
         tag markers, 531  
         tagged frames, 531  
         text snippets, 531  
         text threads, 136, 147  
         text variables, 163  
         thumbnails, 37–38, 80  
         Tool Tips, 37  
         transparency on screen, 57  
     displays. *See* screen display  
     dissolves, 734  
     distances, measuring, 24, 25  
     distortions  
         objects. *See* transformations  
         printing process, 649  
 Distribute Columns Evenly  
     command, 393  
 Distribute Rows Evenly  
     command, 393  
 distributing objects  
     Align panel, 594–597  
     Gap tool, 595–597  
     Live Distribute feature, 595  
     table rows or columns, 393  
 “do script” method, 691  
 docked publication display, 39  
 Document Bleed settings, 496  
 Document Chapter Numbering  
     options, 543–544, 546  
 Document CMYK setting, 634  
 document defaults, 62  
 Document dictionary  
     preferences settings, 50  
 Document Fonts folder, 687–688  
 document grid, 47–48, 110, 119–120  
 Document Grid preferences  
     settings, 47–48  
 Document Open Password  
     setting, 512  
 document pages  
     applying master spread  
         edits, 101–104  
     applying master spreads, 83, 97, 99  
     creating master pages from, 95  
     overriding master page  
         items, 100–101  
 document presets, 72–73  
 Document Recovery Data  
     preferences, 59–60  
 Document RGB setting, 738  
 Document Setup dialog  
     box, 77–78, 83  
 Document source spaces, 636  
 document spaces (color management), 632–633  
 documents. *See* publications  
 dodecagons, drawing, 22  
 donut shapes, 333  
 dorkiness of hyperlink  
     appearance options, 711  
 DOS look, achieving, 196  
 dot-doubling, 611  
 dot leaders  
     in tables of contents, 548  
     in tabs, 271–272

- dots per inch (dpi), 464
  - dotted strokes, 347–348, 350, 352
  - double quotes (“), 39, 50, 183
  - double-sided printing, 671
  - double spaces, cleaning up, 229
  - doughnut shapes, 333
  - downloadable fonts,
    - printing, 660–661
  - downloading
    - color sets, 619–620
    - fonts, 660–661
    - subsets of glyphs in fonts, 36
  - downsampling images,
    - 464, 505–507
  - dpi (dots per inch), 464
  - drag and drop features
    - applying fills, 354
    - applying master pages, 97
    - copying text, 192–193
    - Grid Mode and, 592–593
    - image redraw settings, 39
    - importing graphic files, 456
    - importing multiple files, 459
    - importing text files, 136
    - magnifying area of
      - screen, 64, 65, 66
    - moving objects, 576
    - moving text, 192–193
    - placing items, 458–459
    - resizing tables, 392–394
    - scrolling, 66
    - snippets on desktop, 516
    - text editing, 41, 192–193
  - draw-downs, 610
  - drawing. *See also* lines and line segments; paths (drawn); *names of specific shapes*
    - basic shapes, 322–323
    - Bezier paths, 323–324, 328–332
    - drawing tools, 17, 18, 322
    - drop shadows, 369
    - feathering, 372–375
    - fills. *See* fills
    - frames, 321, 322
    - gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills
    - motion paths, 731
    - Ninas, 702–703
    - paths, 21, 321, 326–334, 328–329
    - with Pen tool, 21, 327–328
    - with Pencil tool, 21–22, 326–327
    - strokes. *See* strokes
    - tips, 328–329
    - transparency. *See* transparency
  - drawing and redrawing
    - screen display, 55
  - drawing tools, 17, 18, 322
  - drawings
    - bitmap graphics. *See* bitmap graphics
    - choosing graphic file formats, 461–463
    - PostScript paths. *See* paths (drawn)
    - vector graphics. *See* vector graphics
  - dreaded pink highlights,
    - 228, 239, 290
  - dreams of formatting and organizational goodness, 700
  - Dreamweaver, 518
  - driving cars, scripting and, 690
  - DRM (Digital Rights Management), 511–512
  - drop caps, 275–276, 282,
    - 302, 435–436
  - Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box, 277
  - drop shadows
    - angles of, 368
    - applying, 369
    - colors, 368
    - creating, 369
    - display options, 465
    - glow effect, 371–373
    - Inner Shadow effect, 370–371
    - movie frames and, 727
    - positioning, 368
    - transparency and, 368, 675
  - DTBook .EPUB files, 523
  - DTPtools PageControl plug-in, 669
  - dull as rocks number formatting, 295
  - dummy second-level entries, 558
  - dummy text, 159–161, 550
  - duotones, halftone screening settings, 656
  - Duplicate Master Spread command, 95
  - Duplicate Spread command, 83
  - duplicated names of fonts, 239
  - duplicating. *See also* copying
    - animation, 730
    - grids of objects, 592–593
    - master spreads, 95
    - multiple merged records on a page, 528
    - objects, 335, 578
    - objects in states, 722
    - objects while transforming, 574
    - pages and page spreads, 83
    - ruler guides, 117
    - swatches, 616
  - duration of animated objects, 732
  - dynamic ranges of color, 635–636
  - Dynamic Spelling option,
    - 51, 203, 204
- E**
- early days of page layout, 17. *See also* ancient typographers
  - Ease In option, 728
  - eBooks
    - Digital Editions, 522–523
    - tags in PDF files, 502, 533
  - ECMA JavaScript standard, 691
  - edges, feathering, 372–375
  - Edit Color Swatch dialog box, 614
  - Edit Glyph Set dialog box, 159
  - Edit Gradient Swatch dialog box, 614
  - Edit Header and Edit Footer commands, 390–392
  - Edit Original feature, 477
  - Edit Stroke Style dialog box, 352
  - Edit Text Variable dialog box, 166
  - Edit Tint Swatch dialog box, 614
  - Edit With feature, 477
  - editable objects, copying, 61
  - editing
    - color sets, 620
    - colors, 614
    - compound paths, 334
    - Control panel options, 34
    - documents in Book panel, 539
    - effects, 376
    - embedded graphics, 478
    - Flash files, 739–740
    - glyph sets, 159
    - gradients, 358–360, 614
    - headers or footers, 392
    - hyperlink sources
      - or destinations, 709–711, 712–713
    - images in PDF files, 507
    - layer properties, 127–128
    - master spreads, 99

- menus, 32–33
- metadata, 176
- mixed ink groups, 613
- motion paths, 730
- multi-state objects, 722–723
- notes, 199
- object styles, 441
- original graphic files, 477
- page size, 79
- PDF export presets, 515
- print presets, 666
- Quick Apply list items, 450, 451
- ruler guides, 114
- scripts, 691–693
- shortcuts, 29–32
- slide shows, 722–723
- stroke styles, 352
- strokes, 348–349
- table or cell styles, 414–415
- text. *See* editing text
- text variables, 166, 169
- text wrap boundary, 419, 420
- tints, 614
- tracking changes, 196–197
- editing text. *See also* editing
  - character styles, 306
  - checking spelling, 200–204
  - cursor movement
    - shortcuts, 190–192
  - deleting styled paragraphs, 222
  - drag and drop editing,
    - 41, 192–193
  - finding and changing
    - formatting attributes,
      - 218–221
  - finding and changing
    - text, 212–230
  - glyph sets, 159
  - headers and footers in
    - tables, 392
  - index entries, 561
  - index page references, 561–562
  - moving text, 192–193
  - paragraph styles, 311
  - Story Editor, 193–196
  - tab stops, 270
  - table items, 389
  - tracking changes, 196–197
- EditWriters, 235
- Effect path text options, 445–447
- effects. *See also* animation
  - beveling, 371, 372, 373
  - blurry text, 375–376
  - copying to other objects, 376
  - editing, 376
  - Effects panel, 11, 362, 364, 367
  - embossing, 371, 372, 373
  - feathering, 372–375
  - glows, 370–372, 371–373
  - removing, 376
  - text on a path options, 445–447
- Effects dialog box, 367, 368
- Effects panel, 11, 362, 364, 367
- elder evil space gods (Cthulhu, etc.), 294, 376
- elements, XML, 531. *See also* XML
- Ellipse Frame tool, 17, 18
- ellipses and Ellipse tool
  - converting shapes to, 340
  - drawing, 17, 22, 322–323
  - Tools panel, 18, 322
- em, defined, 243
- Em Software, 523
- email addresses, 226, 710
- embarrassment of hot pink
  - dingbats, 311
- Embed Fonts setting (EPS
  - export), 498
- Embed Page Thumbnails
  - option, 502, 736
- embedded color profiles, 496,
  - 629–630, 633–634, 639
- Embedded CSS declarations
  - option, 520
- embedded fonts, 498, 500, 510–511
- embedded graphics
  - color profiles, 633–634
  - displaying on Links panel, 473
  - editing originals, 478
  - embedding and unembedding,
    - 477–478
  - in lines of text. *See* inline frames
    - overview, 472
    - page thumbnails, 502
    - size of publications and, 478
- embedded movies in PDF files, 706
- embedded OPI links, 468–469
- embedded Preflight
  - profiles, 685–686
- embedded sounds in PDF
  - files, 726–727
- embedded text files, 189
- Emboss effect, 371, 372
- embossing images, 371, 372
- empowerment, 704
- empty CSS declarations, 520
- empty frames, placing and
  - fitting graphics into, 486
- Emulate Adobe InDesign
  - 2.0 CMS Off (color
    - management preset), 627
- Emulate InDesign 2.0 option, 508
- emulsion, print settings for, 655
- Enable Anti-Aliasing option, 57
- Enable Color Management
  - option, 467–468
- Enable Dynamic Spelling
  - option, 51, 203
- Enable Floating Document
  - Window Docking option, 39
- Enable Layout Adjustment
  - option, 89, 102–103
- Enable Multi-Touch
  - Gestures option, 38
- Enable Track Changes in
  - Current Story option, 197
- encoding
  - PDF files, 506–507
  - XML files, 533
- encryption, exporting PDF
  - files, 512–513
- End Indicator (text on paths), 443
- End Nested Style Character
  - option, 278
- endnotes, 183, 209
- ends of stories, limiting
  - searches to, 214
- Engine pop-up menu, 631
- entering text
  - creating text frames, 136–137
  - dummy text, 159–161
  - glyphs, 157–159
  - importing text, 181–182
  - Excel data, 186–188
  - tagged text, 188–189
  - text-only files, 185–186
  - Word and RTF files, 182–185
- non-Latin faces and, 42
- special characters, 155–159
- Type tool, 17, 18, 21
- entries, index. *See* indexes
  - and index entries



- Entry Separators options, 565–566
- envelopes, 81
- environment, optimizing for
  - color management, 625
- EPS graphics
  - choosing graphic file
    - formats, 461
  - color management and,
    - 624, 636, 640
  - display performance settings, 56
  - editing original, 477
  - exporting, 496–499
  - importing, 468–469, 663
  - listing fonts in, 261–262
  - metafiles, 460
  - OPI links in, 663
  - OPI print settings, 663
  - strengths and weaknesses
    - of, 461
  - transparency and, 361, 675
- EPS Import Options dialog
  - box, 468–469, 663
- EPUB files
  - creating, 521–523
  - exporting, 545
  - interactivity in, 706
- equal-width columns, 111
- equilateral polygons, 22
- eras, text variables for, 165
- Eraser tool, 18, 22, 336–337
- erasing paths, 336–337
- errors
  - Preflight warnings, 683–684
  - previewing before placing
    - files, 188–189
- escaping characters, 225
- Escher, M. C., 702
- espresso machines, end of
  - civilization and, 320
- ESTK (ExtendScript Toolkit), 691
- Europe ISO Fogra27 setting, 629
- Europe Prepress 2 setting, 627
- even and odd pages, 543, 646–647
- even-odd fills, 334–335
- Even Pages Only option, 646–647
- evenly spacing columns
  - on page, 111
- evenly spacing objects on
  - page, 20, 594–597
- events
  - animation settings, 728
  - arranging timing, 731
  - button-activated, 716
  - reassigning, 732
- evil space gods (Cthulhu, etc.), 294, 376
- examples of scripts. *See* scripting examples
- Excel files, 181, 186–188, 385
- exclamation mark on yellow
  - triangle icon, 473
- Exclude Overlap path
  - operation, 339
- Expand All Footnotes
  - command, 195
- Expand/Collapse Notes, 199
- expanded typefaces, faking, 248
- expanding
  - footnotes, 195
  - layer display, 125
  - notes, 199
  - panels, 10, 14
- Expert versions of fonts, 251
- Export Adobe Flash CS5
  - Professional (FLA)
    - dialog box, 739
- Export Adobe PDF dialog box
  - color management
    - and, 638–640
  - Compression pane, 505–507
  - General pane, 500–505
  - Ink Manager, 509, 621
  - overview, 500
  - Security pane, 511–513
- Export dialog box, 190
- Export EPS dialog box,
  - 496–499, 621
- export filters, 190, 232
- Export for Dreamweaver
  - command, 518
- Export JPEG dialog box, 495–496
- Export SWF dialog box, 737–739
- Export XML dialog box, 533
- ExportAllStories example
  - script, 695
- exporting
  - animation for PDF files, 732
  - Background Tasks panel
    - information, 27
  - books, 536, 545, 671
  - Buzzword files, 189
  - color management
    - profiles and, 636
  - documents with hyperlinks, 714
  - EPS graphics, 496–499
  - EPUB files, 521, 545
  - export options, saving, 513–515
  - Flash files, 739
  - HTML files, 517–523
  - InDesign IDML files, 516
  - InDesign Markup
    - Format files, 76
  - interactive features,
    - 706, 732, 739
  - interactive PDF files,
    - 732, 736–737
  - interactive SWF files, 737–739
  - JPEG files, 495–496
  - metadata, 488
  - motion presets, 732
  - objects as snippets, 516
  - overview, 494
  - PDF export presets, 513–515
  - PDF files, 500–515, 545,
    - 671, 736–737
  - PostScript files to disk, 643
  - print PDF files, 500–515
  - print presets, 666
  - stories from publications, 695
  - style groups and, 317
  - SWF files, 737–739
  - text files, 190, 317
  - XML files, 533
  - XML tags, 533–534
- Exposé, 397*n*
- ExtendScript Toolkit, 691
- Extensible Markup
  - Language. *See* XML
- Extension Manager, 68
- extensions, file, 75–76, 164
- External CSS option, 520
- Extra Carriage Returns
  - setting, 186
- Extra Spaces setting, 186
- “extract label” method, 699
- extracting metadata from files, 488
- extraterrestrial plots, 376
- eye icon, 125
- Eyedropper Options
  - dialog box, 24, 25
- Eyedropper tool, 18, 24,
  - 25, 354, 356
- EyeOne device, 625

**F**

F4V files, 723, 724, 725  
 facing pages, 70, 71, 83, 86  
 Facing Pages option, 70, 71, 83  
 Fade In animation, 728  
 fades (animated objects), 730  
 fake condensed or expanded type, 248  
 fake fractions, 257–258  
 fake italic type, 249, 250  
 fake Latin text, 159–161  
 famine, 422  
 Farrukh Systems Imposition Publisher, 667  
 Fast Display setting, 465  
 fast hyperlinks, 707–708  
 Fast Saves option (Word), 185  
 favorite shortcuts, 32  
 Feather Widths option, 375  
 feathering, 372–375, 465, 610  
 Fidelity slider, 336  
 fields  
   button actions for, 717  
   tab order in Acrobat, 719  
 fiends, hardcore Find/Change shortcuts and, 217  
 figures  
   captions, 451–454  
   figure numbers, 162, 297, 299  
   lining figures, 260–261  
   numerals. *See* numbers  
 file control systems in networked workgroups, 540–541  
 file extensions, 75–76, 164  
 file formats. *See also* names of specific formats  
   compression and, 462  
   exporting text, 190  
   graphic file formats, 461–463  
   importing text, 181  
   output providers, sending files to, 683  
 File Handling dialog box, 59–61, 479–481  
 File Info dialog box, 487  
 file linking. *See* linked graphics and text files  
 File Name text variable, 162, 164  
 file paths  
   copying, 479  
   relinking, 480

files. *See also* publications  
   Buzzword files, 189  
   converting, 74–75, 472  
   creating links to, 60  
   exporting for Web sites, 517–523  
   hyperlinks to, 710  
   imagesetting, preparing for, 682–683  
   metadata in, 486–488  
   opening with button actions, 718  
   organizing in books, 538  
   packaging for remote printing, 686–688  
   preflight testing, 683–686  
   relinking to different file types, 476–477  
   temporary, 60  
   text variables in, 163  
 Fill Frame Proportionally option, 484, 529  
 Fill selector, 18, 27, 354, 603  
 Fill with Placeholder Text command, 160  
 fills  
   after path operations, 338  
   alternating, in tables, 409–410  
   applying, 353–355  
   applying effects to, 367  
   applying to text characters, 262, 263  
   cell styles, 412  
   copying with Eyedropper tool, 24, 25  
   currently selected swatch, 603  
   default fill color, 603  
   displaying information about, 28  
   Fill selector, 27, 354, 603  
   finding and replacing in objects, 133–134  
   gradient fills. *See* gradients and gradient fills  
   paths with even-odd fills, 334–335  
   removing fills, 27, 354–355  
   swapping fill and stroke colors, 603  
   table options, 412  
   table styles, 414  
 filtering Quick Apply list, 451

filters  
   export filters, 190, 232  
   import filters, 181–189, 232  
 Final positional form, 259  
 financial document numbering schemes, 171  
 find and replace. *See* finding and replacing  
 Find/Change dialog box, 11, 133–134, 212–230  
 Find Font dialog box, 261–262  
 Find Format Settings dialog box, 218  
 Find Missing Links Before Opening Document checkbox, 480  
 Find Missing Links Before Opening Document option, 60  
 Find Next button, 216  
 Find Object Format Options dialog box, 133–134  
 Find What field, 215  
 FindChangeByList example script, 695  
 finding  
   linked images on disk, 478–479, 480  
   metadata in files, 488  
   missing links, 60, 475, 480  
   words, 215  
 finding and replacing  
   defining range of searches, 214  
   Find/Change dialog box, 11, 133–134, 212–230  
   finding next instances, 216  
   fonts, 261–262  
   formatting attributes, 218–221  
   index entries, 562  
   keyboard shortcuts, 217–218  
   metacharacters or wildcards, 216  
   methods, 212–213  
   object formatting, 133–134  
   options and settings, 213–214  
   overview, 212–213  
   saving queries, 230  
   text  
   deleting text with specified styles, 222  
   FindChangeByList example script, 695  
   glyphs, 228–230

- GREP methods, 223–228
- index entries, 562
- metacharacters or wildcards, 216
- methods, 212–213
- note text, 52
- replacing text, 216–217
- replacing with Clipboard contents, 221
- Unicode text values, 221–222
- First Baseline Offset option, 208
- First Baseline option, 426
- first baselines of text, 139–141, 208, 426
- First Line Left Indent field, 265
- first line of paragraphs
  - aligning to baseline grid, 275
  - first line indentation, 265–267
- “first name, last name”
  - order, 225, 228
- First on Page option, 164, 172
- First Page button, 3, 5
- Fit Content Proportionally
  - command, 484, 592
- Fit Content to Frame
  - command, 484
- Fit Frame to Content command, 484, 485, 592, 723
- Fit Page in Window view, 32, 63, 81, 82
- Fit Selection in Window
  - command, 63–64
- Fit Spread in Window view, 63–64
- fitting
  - content in frames, 483–486, 592
  - data merge content, 529
  - frames to content, 154–155
  - objects on screen, 32, 63–66
  - video content in frames, 723
- Fitting pop-up menu, 529
- Fixed Column Width option, 138
- fixed leading
  - baseline positioning, 139–141
  - inline frames and, 425
- FLA. *See* Flash and FLA files
- flagging. *See* highlighting
- Flash and FLA files
  - animation, 727–728
  - controllers, 725
  - editing, 739–740
  - exporting, 706, 739–740
  - hyperlinks to, 709–710
  - limitations, 727
  - text in, 739
  - using motion presets
    - in, 728, 732
- Flash Professional, 732
- Flash TLF Text option, 739
- Flatten Transparency option, 739
- flattened Photoshop files, 462–463
- flattener. *See also* transparency
  - Acrobat Reader and, 501
  - exporting EPS graphics, 499
  - exporting PDF files, 511
  - flattener presets, 677–680
  - flattening methods, 674–675
  - previewing settings, 680–681
  - resolution setting, 677–679
  - settings, 361
  - tricks and guidelines, 675–676
- flattener presets, 677–680
- Flattener Preview panel (Flattener Alert panel), 680–681
- Fleishman, Glenn, 464
- flexographic printing, 649
- Flip buttons, 575
- Flip commands, 586
- Flip option, path text, 447–448
- Flip pop-up menu, 655
- flipping
  - arrows, 346–347
  - buttons for, 575
  - objects, 586
  - output options, 655
  - pages automatically, 737
  - text on paths, 444, 447–448
- floating panels, 3, 38
- floating windows (documents), 39
- floating windows (video), 726
- floppy disk icon, 318
- flowing text, 146–148, 150, 152–154. *See also*
  - linked text frames
- fluorescent inks, 610
- FLV files, 723, 724, 725. *See also* Flash and FLA files
- fly-out tool menus, 18
- focus, 9–10, 716
- Fogra setting, 627, 629
- Folder Number display, 474
- Folder options (metadata), 452
- folders
  - displaying paths in
    - metadata, 452
  - paths in text variables, 164
  - relink folders, 480–481
  - searching for fonts, 688
- Font Downloading
  - settings, 660–661
- font families and fonts
  - checking in Preflight, 683
  - Document Fonts folder, 687–688
  - downloadable fonts,
    - printing, 660–661
  - duplicated names, 239
  - embedding in EPS files, 498
  - finding and changing, 218–221, 228–230
  - font preview size, 41
  - glyphs. *See* glyphs; special characters
  - hyphens next to names, 237
  - including with files, 686
  - kerning and, 245
  - letter and word spacing, 287–289
  - mixing and matching
    - characters, 159
  - Multiple Master fonts, 40
  - non-Latin fonts, 42
  - OpenType fonts, 256–261
  - ornament characters, 159
  - outline fonts, 420
  - PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, and PDF/X-4 files, 500
  - positional forms, 259
  - printer fonts, 420
  - publication folder for, 687–688
  - resident fonts, 660
  - searching directories for, 688
  - selecting, 237–239
  - special characters. *See* special characters
  - stylistic sets, 259
  - subsetting, 36, 510–511
  - substitution, 43, 228, 239
  - symbol fonts, 239
  - version numbers, 261
- Font Preview Size option, 41
- font subsetting, 36, 510–511
- font substitution, 43, 228, 239
- footers. *See* headers or footers

- Footnote Options dialog
  - box, 206–209
- footnotes
  - creating, 205–209
  - deleting, 206
  - endnotes, 209
  - finding text in, 214
  - footnote reference markers, 205
  - formatting, 206–209
  - leading, 207–208
  - limitations of, in InDesign, 205
  - numbering options, 206
  - placement options, 208
  - rules above, 209
  - spacing options, 207–208
  - split, 208, 209
  - split columns and, 145
  - Story Editor view, 195
  - text of, 205
  - usefulness of, 205
  - in Word files, 183
- Footnotes/Endnotes option, 183
- For Next # of Pages option, 556
- For Next # of Paragraphs
  - option, 556
- For Position Only images, 477
- force justified paragraph
  - alignment, 264
- foreground color. *See* transparency
- formats. *See* file formats
- formatting. *See also* styles
  - after path operations, 338
  - attributes. *See* formatting attributes
  - characters. *See* character formatting; formatting text
  - Clipboard contents and, 221
  - compared to styles, 301, 302
  - Eyedropper tool and, 24, 25
  - finding and replacing in objects, 133–134
  - paragraphs. *See* formatting text; paragraph formatting
  - paths, 324
  - Quick Apply feature, 448–451
  - retaining when pasting, 61
  - reusing. *See* styles
  - tables. *See* formatting tables
  - text. *See* formatting text
  - Web site files, 517–523
- Formatting Affects Container
  - button, 18, 27
- Formatting Affects Text
  - button, 18, 27, 263
- formatting attributes
  - deleting text with specified styles, 222
  - finding and changing, 218–221
  - typesetting tags. *See* tagged text
- formatting tables. *See also* tables
  - alternating fills or strokes, 409–410
  - applying, 401
  - borders of tables, 409
  - cell options, 401
  - diagonal lines, 407–408
  - fills, 404–408
  - gradients, 406–407
  - strokes, 401–404
- formatting text. *See also* tagged text
  - applying formatting to entire text frames, 237
  - characters. *See* character formatting
  - in containers, 27, 263
  - cross references, 178, 179–180
  - dates, 164
  - deleting text with specified styles, 222
  - email addresses, 226
  - finding and changing attributes, 218–221
  - global formatting, 301
  - local formatting, 301, 305, 307, 309, 310
  - paragraphs. *See* paragraph formatting
  - pasted text, 180–181
  - preserving or removing in imported text, 183, 188
  - selecting text for formatting, 236–237, 241, 242
  - styles. *See* styles
  - tab leaders, 271–272
  - tables. *See* formatting tables
  - text between tags, 226, 229
  - typesetting tags. *See* tagged text
- formulas in panel and
  - dialog box fields, 16
- forum, InDesign scripting, 693
- fountains. *See* gradients and gradient fills
- FPO images, 477
- fractions, 157, 257–258
- frame drawing tools, 136, 137
- Frame Fitting Options
  - dialog box, 485, 486
- frames (layout)
  - applying effects to, 366
  - button rollovers and states, 719–720
  - centering contents in, 486
  - converting clipping paths to, 494
  - converting to buttons, 715
  - converting to text frames, 136
  - corner options, 341–342
  - drawing, 321, 322
  - EPUB layout, 521–522
  - fitting features, 483–486
  - graphic place icons, 68
  - inline. *See* inline frames
  - for media files, 723
  - non-rectangular, 143
  - placing graphics in, 457
  - placing multiple files and, 459–460
  - removing objects from, 700–702
  - scaling and, 582
  - selecting frames and contents, 481–482
  - shrinking to fit contents, 154–155
  - tagging with XML tags, 532
  - text. *See* text frames
  - text flow icons and, 68
  - transforming contents, 569–570, 572
  - XML element data and, 532
- frames (movies), 725
- Fraser, Bruce, 464, 624
- Free Transform tool
  - moving objects, 578
  - overview, 17, 24
  - rotating objects, 584
  - scaling objects, 580
  - shortcuts, 18
- Freedman, Matt, 702
- freeform paths, 21–22, 327–328
- “freezing” text variables, 169
- frequency
  - angle settings, 655–657
  - compression and, 505
- Friedl, Jeffrey E. F., 227
- friends, impressing, 23
- full-height numerals, 260–261
- full screen mode (Acrobat), 737

full spectrum lighting, 625  
 “furi kuri,” 36  
 furlongs, 45  
 fx icon, 376  
 fx pop-up menu, 368

## G

- gamuts, color, 600, 607, 617, 631–632
- Gap Color and Gap Tint pop-ups, 347, 348
- Gap setting, 648
- Gap tool, 17, 18, 20, 595–597
- gaps
  - adjusting in strokes, 347–348
  - in dashed strokes, 345, 346, 347, 348
  - between printed pages, 648
  - spacing objects, 595–597
  - in stroke style patterns, 347, 348, 352
- gate folds, 81
- General pane (Print dialog box), 644–647
- General Preferences dialog box, 36–37
- General Purpose option (color management preset), 627
- Generate Index button or dialog box, 562–566
- Generate Overset Text Report with Document Creation option, 528
- generating
  - data merge reports, 528
  - embedded SWF file codes, 737
  - indexes, 562–566
  - tables of contents, 550
- generosity of PeachPit Press, 287
- gestures, 38
- GIF files, 56, 460, 466–468, 519
- Gilbert & Sullivan themes, 159
- Gill, Tim, 673
- global formatting, 301
- Global Light option, 368
- glow effect, 370–372, 371–373, 695
- Glyph Scaling option, 288–289
- glyph sets, 159
- glyphs. *See also* special characters
  - accessing in fonts, 157–159
  - bullets, 293–295
  - entering in text frames, 157–159
  - finding and changing, 213, 228–230
  - Glyph panel, 228–230
  - glyph sets, 159
  - Glyphs panel, 11
  - highlighting substituted glyphs, 43, 44
  - OpenType fonts and, 257
  - recently-used, 159
  - scaling, 288–289
  - subsetting characters in fonts, 36
  - substitution, 228
- Glyphs panel, 11, 157–159, 228–230
- gnawing off legs, 627
- Go Back and Go Forward commands, 67
- Go to Bridge button, 4
- Go to Destination action, 716
- Go to Link button, 478
- Go to Next Note or Go to Previous Note button, 198
- Go to Next State action, 718
- Go to Next View action, 718
- Go to Note Anchor button, 198
- Go to... Page action, 716
- Go To Page command, 67
- Go to Previous State action, 718
- Go to Previous View action, 718
- Go to State action, 718
- Go to URL action, 717
- GoLive, 517
- Grabber hand. *See* Hand tool
- GRaCoL setting, 629
- Gradient and Mesh Resolution setting, 678–679
- Gradient Feather effect, 375, 610
- Gradient Feather tool, 18, 26
- Gradient panel, 11, 355, 358, 359, 602
- gradient ramps, 356, 357
- gradient stops, 356, 357, 609
- gradient swatches, 607–610
- Gradient tool, 18, 26, 356
- gradients and gradient fills
  - applying
    - basic techniques, 618–619
    - to characters, 262, 263
    - to multiple paths, 360
    - to paths, 355–356
    - to table cells, 406–407
    - transparency to, 610
  - center points, 355, 357
  - changing gradient colors, 359
  - creating, 356–358, 607–610
  - editing, 358–360
  - feathering effects and, 26, 375, 610
  - gradient center point control, 356, 357
  - gradient ramp control, 356, 357
  - gradient stop control, 356, 357
  - gradient swatches, 607–610
  - linear gradients, 355
  - radial gradients, 355
  - tools, 18
  - transparency and feathering, 610
  - transparency flattener and, 678–679
- graphic display settings. *See also* screen display
  - Fast Display setting, 465
  - High Quality setting, 465
  - overriding for individual graphics, 465–466
  - Typical Display setting, 465
- graphic file formats. *See also* names of specific formats (TIFF images, etc.)
  - bitmaps. *See* bitmap graphics
  - choosing formats, 461–463
  - hybrid files, 460–461
  - limitations of, 461–463
  - metafiles, 460–461
  - vector graphics. *See* vector graphics
- graphic frames
  - converting to text frames, 136
  - inline. *See* inline frames
- Graphic place icon, 68

graphics. *See also names of specific formats (TIFF images, etc.)*  
 applying colors to, 618–619  
 button rollovers and states, 719–720  
 captioning, 162, 164, 174–177, 451–454  
 checking in Preflight, 683  
 choosing graphic file formats, 461–463  
 conditional images, 721  
 contact sheets, 460  
 copying pathnames, 524  
 editing original files, 477  
 embedded. *See embedded graphics*  
 EPUB layout, 522  
 exporting HTML files, 517  
 exporting XHTML files, 519  
 fitting features, 483–486  
 gathering linked images, 479, 686–687  
 graphic display settings, 55–58, 464–466  
 image quality, 495  
 ImageCatalog script, 695  
 importing in merged data, 524, 525  
 importing into InDesign. *See importing graphics*  
 importing with Word files, 384  
 InDesign INDD files, 471–472  
 information about, 28  
 inline, 184  
 listing fonts in, 261–262  
 metadata, 162, 164, 174–177, 488  
 multi-state objects, 721–723  
 opening documents with linked graphics, 472–473  
 optimizing subsampling, 658–659  
 panning, 483  
 placing. *See placing graphics*  
 preserving dimensions during relinking, 480  
 preserving dimensions when relinking, 61  
 printing as crossed-out boxes, 660  
 printing proxy images, 660  
 redraw settings, 39  
 relinking to different file types, 476–477

replacing with Clipboard contents, 221  
 resampling images, 505–507  
 resizing after layout adjustments, 103  
 resolution. *See image resolution*  
 scaling and, 463–464, 582  
 screen display of, 55–58  
 selecting frames and contents, 481–482  
 slide shows, 721–723  
 in table cells, 388, 390  
 wrapping text around. *See text wrap*  
 Graphics pane (Print dialog box), 658–662  
 Gravity path text option, 445, 447  
 gray boxes, displaying for graphics, 465, 660  
 Gray Out setting, 56  
 grayscale images, 496, 497, 506, 658–659  
 Greek Type Below field, 57, 58  
 greeking, 57, 58  
 GREP  
   expressions in nested styles, 282–283  
   finding and changing text with, 213, 223–228  
   marking subexpressions, 225–226  
   nested GREP styles, 282–283  
   resources for mastering, 227–228  
   routine text cleanup, 227  
   saving queries, 230  
 GREP panel, 223–228  
 GREP Styles dialog box, 282–283  
 Gridline Every option, 47  
 grids. *See also guides*  
   arranging objects in, 592–593  
   baseline grid, 47, 119–120, 272–275  
   color of, 47  
   contact sheets, 460  
   custom baseline grids, 273  
   document grid, 47–48, 119–120  
   exporting PDF files containing, 504  
   Grid Mode, 592–593  
   leading and, 140  
   MakeGrid script, 695  
   overview, 119–120

positioning in back, 48  
 preferences, 47–48  
 printing, 647  
 snapping and, 119–120  
 spacing, 47–48  
 Grids in Back option, 48  
 Grids Preferences dialog box, 47–48  
 grizzled graybeards. *See ancient typographers; Blatner, David; Bringham, Bob; Kvern, Olav Martin*  
 Group command, 131  
 groups  
   figures and captions, 453  
   grouped panels, 13–14  
   grouping selected objects, 131  
   layers and, 125, 131  
   mixed ink groups, 611–613  
   playing animated objects together, 732  
   selecting objects in groups, 20, 107–108, 109, 131  
   selecting objects in nested groups, 109  
   style groups, 315–317  
   transformations and, 571  
   transparency in, 365–366  
   ungrouping objects, 131  
 grunge effects, 370  
 guides. *See also grids*  
   adding around objects, 114, 694  
   colors, specifying, 115–116  
   column guides, 78, 108, 111–112  
   copying, 117  
   creating, 112–113  
   deleting, 117  
   displaying, 110, 115–116  
   document grid and, 110  
   editing, 114  
   exporting PDF files containing, 504  
   hiding, 110  
   layout adjustment settings, 103–104  
   locking and unlocking, 112, 116–117  
   margin guides, 78, 108  
   moving between layers, 114, 115  
   overview, 108–110  
   positioning in back, 49  
   preferences, 48–49  
   printing, 647

- ruler guides, 3, 112–117
- selecting, 114
- setting page layout
  - options, 108–119
- Smart Guides, 49, 50, 108, 117–119
- snapping and, 108–110, 113, 119–120
- types of, 108
- Guides and Pasteboard
  - Preferences dialog box, 48–49
- Guides in Back option, 49
- Gutenberg, Johannes, 641
- gutters, 71, 111, 138, 144

## H

- H&J Violations option, 43
- H.264 encoded videos, 723, 724, 725
- hairlines, 343
- halftone screens
  - compression and, 505
  - graphics and, 464
  - mixed ink swatches and, 611
  - optimized subsampling, 659
- Hand tool
  - as navigation tool, 18, 65–66
  - settings, 39
  - shortcuts for, 18
  - switching to, 26, 64
- Hand Tool option, 39
- handles. *See* control handles; selection handles
- hanging indents, 266–267, 381
- hanging punctuation, 318–320
- hanging side heads, 427–429, 436–437
- hanging text in margins, 276
- Hard Light transparency
  - blending mode, 364
- hardware, optimizing for color viewing, 625
- headers or footers
  - dictionary-style headers, 172, 175
  - phone book style, 173, 175
  - table header or footer rows, 390–392
  - table styles and, 414
  - text variables and, 162, 164, 171, 172
- headings
  - hanging side heads, 381, 427–429, 436–437
  - in index entries, 553
  - in tables of contents, 545
- headline type, 243
- headlines, spanning columns
  - with, 143–145
- heartache. *See also* madness
  - color policies and, 630
  - numbering and, 300
- Hebrew typesetting, 259
- height
  - baseline character positioning, 139–141
  - scaling and, 580
  - table rows, 394–395
  - x height and leading, 243
- Height field, 581
- help
  - finding in Tooltips, 37
  - Tool Hints panel, 19
- hexagons, drawing, 22
- hidden buttons, 720
- hidden cells in Excel, importing, 187
- hidden characters, 192, 216. *See also* special characters
- hidden layers
  - finding text in, 214
  - hiding, 125–126, 128
  - including index entries from, 564
  - including tables of contents entries from, 549
  - text wrap and, 128
- hidden objects, 125, 598
- hidden panels, 38
- hidden tables of contents, 715
- hidden tools, 18
- Hide button, 3
- Hide Guides command, 110
- Hide Live Corners command, 341
- Hide Others command, 125
- hiding
  - animated objects, 730
  - baseline grid, 110
  - buttons, 717, 720
  - Control panel items, 34
  - document grid, 110
  - fields, 717

- guides, 110
- layers, 125–126, 128
- master page items, 100
- menu items, 33
- multi-state objects, 723
- objects, 598
- panels, 10
- unused index topics, 560–561
- High Quality display
  - setting, 55, 465
- High Resolution display setting, 56
- High Resolution flattener
  - style, 677, 678
- high resolution images, 493, 725
- Highlight preferences
  - settings, 42–44
- highlighting
  - Kerning, 44
  - simulating effect in text, 253–254
  - substituted fonts and glyphs, 43, 44
  - tracking, 44
  - typographic problems, 42–44, 290
- Highlights for Children* puzzles, 324
- H&J violations, 43
- holes
  - clipping paths and, 493
  - in closed paths, 333–335
  - in objects, 339
- horizontal axis, reflecting objects, 586
- Horizontal Margins field, 49
- horizontal ruler, 3, 45
- horizontal ruler guides, 3
- Horizontal Scaling field, 580, 581
- horizontal scroll bar, 3
- horizontally distributing objects on page, 594–597
- horizontally scaling characters, 248
- hourly-wages, paragraph styles and, 308
- hours, in text variables, 165

HTML. *See also* tagged text  
 embedded SWF file codes, 737  
 exporting text to, 517–523  
 exporting XHTML, 518–521  
 finding and changing text  
   between tags, 226, 229  
 importing tables, 385  
 XHTML and interactive  
   features, 706  
 http://-style URLs, 724  
 Hue transparency blending  
   mode, 364  
 human visual color  
   perception, 600  
 hybrid files, 460–461. *See also* EPS  
   graphics; Illustrator graphics;  
   PDF graphics and files; PICT  
   graphics; WMF graphics  
 hyperlinks  
   appearance, 711  
   character styles, 708  
   converting URLs to, 708–709  
   creating, 711  
   creating from URLs, 713  
   cross references, 177–180  
   deleting or resetting, 713  
   destinations for, 709–711  
   displaying, 713  
   editing, 709–711  
   in exported HTML files, 517  
   exporting documents with, 714  
   exporting to Flash files, 739  
   fast hyperlinks, 707–708  
   limitations, 727  
   named and unnamed,  
     707, 711–712  
   overview, 707  
   in PDF files, 504, 707–714  
   previewing, 734–735  
   shared destinations, 710  
   styles for, 711  
   in SWF files, 737  
   updating, 714  
   in Word files, 711  
 Hyperlinks option, 504  
 Hyphenate button, 202  
 hyphenation  
   adding words to user  
     dictionary, 202  
   consecutive hyphens, 286  
   controlling, 285–287  
   dictionaries, 50

discretionary hyphens, 287  
 exported text in Flash files, 739  
 hyphenation zone, 286  
 imported text, 186  
 language and character  
   formatting, 249–250  
 multi-line composition, 284  
 paragraph formatting, 285–287  
 preventing reflow, 687  
 Hyphenation Settings  
   dialog box, 285–287  
 Hyphenation Slider (“Nigel”), 286  
 hyphenation zone, 286  
 hyphens  
   consecutive, 286  
   discretionary, 287  
   entering, 156  
   on Font menu, 237

## I

ICC (International Color  
 Consortium), 509, 624

### icons

displaying panels as, 38  
 reducing panels to, 12  
 resizing, 79

IDE (ExtendScript Toolkit), 691

IDML files, 74, 75, 515–516

IDMS files, 516

Ignore All button, 200

Ignore Linked Profiles policy, 633

Ignore Object and Layer

  Locks option, 103

Ignore Optical Margin

  feature, 319–320

Ignore Ruler Guide Alignments

  option, 103

Ignore Text Wrap option,

  121–122, 141, 142, 419

Illustrator graphics

  AI files, 624, 675

  AICB setting, 456

  color management and, 471, 624

  importing, 456, 469–471

  layers in, 471

  metadata from, 164, 176

  metafiles, 460–461

  placing with captions, 454

  transparency and, 675

Image Import Options dialog

  box, 466–472, 633

Image place icon, 68

image resolution

  best settings, 463–464

  clipping paths and, 493

  displaying in Info panel, 28

  exporting EPS graphics

    and, 498–499

  image quality, 496

  monochrome images, 506

  optimizing printed

    images, 659–660

  posters, 725

  resampling images, 505–507

ImageCatalog script, 695

images. *See* bitmap graphics; GIF

  files; graphics; JPEG files;

  TIFF images; vector graphics

imagesetters and service

  providers. *See also*

  commercial printers

  designer and service bureau

    responsibilities, 682

  file formats for output

    providers, 683

  packaging files for remote

    printing, 686–688

  preflight file testing, 683–686

  preparing files for, 682–683

  screening settings and, 657

IME (Input Method Editor), 42

import filters

  Excel data, 186–188

  overview, 181

  RTF files, 182–185

  tagged text, 188–189, 232

  text-only files, 185–186

  Word files, 182–185

Import Hidden Cells Not Saved

  in View option, 187

Import Inline Graphics

  option, 184, 187

Import Options dialog box

  bitmap images, 466–468

  EPS files, 468–469

  Image Import Options

    dialog box, 466–472

  Microsoft Excel Import Options

    dialog box, 186–188

  RTF Import Options, 182–185

  Tagged Text Import Options

    dialog box, 188–189

  Text Import Options dialog

    box, 185–186

  Word Import Options, 182–185



- Import Styles Automatically
    - option, 185
  - Import Unused Styles option, 184
  - importing
    - audio or video files, 723–724
    - data. *See* importing data
    - graphics. *See* importing graphics
    - master spreads and pages, 95–97
    - motion presets, 732
    - multiple files, 459–460
    - object styles, 442
    - PDF export presets, 515
    - print presets, 666
    - snippets, 60
    - stroke styles, 352, 353
    - tables, 385
    - text. *See* importing text
    - user dictionaries with
      - documents, 50
  - importing data
    - blank lines in data file, 528–529
    - data file setup, 523–524
    - file metadata, 488
    - importing images with
      - text, 524, 525
    - importing indexing with
      - text, 560–561
    - limiting number of records, 529
    - master pages and, 526
    - merging data into InDesign
      - documents, 516–527
    - multiple records on pages, 528
    - overview, 523
    - template setup, 524–526
    - updating merged data, 529–530
  - importing graphics
    - AI graphics, 469–471
    - applying color to imported
      - graphics, 494
    - bitmap graphics, 466–468
    - charts, 187
    - color profiles, 633–634
    - copying and pasting, 456
    - with destination frame
      - selected, 457
    - dragging and dropping, 456
    - embedding files, 472, 477–478
    - EPS graphics, 461, 468–469
    - graphic display settings,
      - 464–466
    - graphic file formats, 461–463
    - import methods, 456
  - InDesign INDD files, 471–472
  - inline graphics in Excel
    - files, 187
  - inline graphics in Word
    - files, 184
  - layer visibility, 468
  - linking to files, 60, 473–477
  - metadata and, 488
  - multiple files, 459–460
  - with no frame selected, 458
  - object styles and, 442
  - overview, 456
  - path operations and, 338
  - PDF graphics, 463, 469–471
  - place icons, 67, 68
  - placing files, 456
  - resizing imported
    - graphics, 482–483
  - unembedding graphics, 478
  - video files, 723–724
- importing text
    - Buzzword files, 189
    - cell and table styles, 416
    - embedding text files, 189
    - Excel data, 186–188, 385
    - HTML files, 385
    - import filters, 181
    - index markers and, 560–561
    - inline graphics and, 184
    - linking to files, 60, 189
    - multiple files, 459–460
    - place icons, 67, 68
    - placing text files, 181–182
    - quotation marks and, 183
    - replacing selected text, 181
    - RTF files, 182–185
    - tables, 385
    - tagged text, 188–189
    - text-only files, 185–186
    - text styles, 317–318
    - text variables, 166–168
    - updating imported text, 189
    - Word files, 182–185,
      - 385, 560–561
    - XML files, 531, 532–533
  - imposition, 667–671
  - Impostrip, 667
  - impressing friends, 23
  - in ports, 145–146, 148
  - In-RIP Separations option, 654
  - in-RIP trapping, 655
  - In Use document status icons, 540
  - inactive publication windows, 8
  - incandescent lighting, 625
  - inch measurement overrides, 16
  - Include Book Documents
    - option, 563–564
  - Include Bookmarks option, 504
  - Include Deleted Text When
    - Spellchecking option, 54
  - Include Entire Folder Path
    - option (text variables), 164
  - Include Entries on Hidden
    - Layers option, 564
  - Include File Extension option
    - (text variables), 164
  - Include Footnotes option, 214
  - Include Hidden layers option, 214
  - Include Index Section
    - Headings option, 564
  - Include Interactive Page
    - Curl option, 738
  - Include Locked Layers (Find
    - Only) option, 213
  - Include Locked Stories (Find
    - Only) option, 214
  - Include Master Pages option, 214
  - Include Note Content in Find/
    - Change Operations option, 52
  - Include Note Content When
    - Checking Spelling option, 52
  - Include Text in Hidden
    - Layers option, 549
  - InCopy, 197, 199–200, 214, 474
  - Increment Every field, 47
  - InData, 523
  - INDD files. *See also* publications
    - importing, 471–472
    - using extensions, 76
  - indenting. *See also* tabs
    - and tab stops
    - bulleted lists, 294
    - hanging indents, 266–267, 381
    - indented (nested) index
      - format, 564
    - paragraph formatting, 265–267
    - table of contents entry
      - levels, 549

- InDesign
- online help, 4
  - plug-ins, 67–68
  - publications. *See* publications
  - “saving back” to earlier versions, 76
  - scripting forum, 693
  - scripting philosophy, 696
  - windows and components, 2–9
- InDesign CS5 Scripting Guide and Tutorial*, 693
- InDesign Interchange (IDML)
- format, 515–516
- InDesign Interchange (INX)
- format, 76, 515
- InDesign Recovery folder, 77
- InDesign Shortcut Sets folder, 30
- InDesign Snippet command, 516
- InDesign tagged text.
- See* tagged text
- index entries. *See* indexes
- and index entries
- Index panel, 11, 553. *See also*
- indexes and index entries
- Index Style options, 565
- Index Text option, 183
- indexers
- eternal affection towards David and Ole, 552
  - medication and, 552
  - whims of, 565
- indexes and index entries
- adding every instance of entries, 557
  - adding multiple entries, 557
  - alpha section heads, 564
  - applying styles, 564–565
  - book documents and, 563–564
  - building indexes, 562–566
  - bypassing dialog box, 557
  - compared to concordances, 552
  - creating entries, 553–557
  - cross-references, 557–559
  - deleting entries, 561
  - dummy, 558
  - editing entries, 561
  - editing page references, 561–562
  - finding entries, 562
  - first-level entries, 553–557
  - forcing entry sort order, 554, 562
  - hidden layers, entries on, 564
  - hyperlinked in PDF files, 504
  - importing topics from other documents, 560–561
  - importing Word/RTF files and, 183, 560–561
  - Index panel, 553
  - nested format, 564
  - overview, 552
  - page number styles, 554
  - page range options, 554–556
  - page references, adding to entries, 559
  - replacing existing indexes, 563
  - run-in format, 564
  - scope of entries, 554–556
  - second-level entries, 560
  - separators, specifying, 565
  - sorting special symbols or numbers, 562
  - styles for entries, 564–565
  - titles, 562–563
- INDS files, 516
- INDT extension, 76
- inferior formatting (subscript), 42, 248–249, 255–256, 259
- Info panel, 11, 27–28
- inheritance
- master spreads, 97, 98
  - parent-child style relationships, 314–315, 439
- Initial positional form, 259
- Ink Black option, 635
- Ink Limit option, 672, 673
- Ink lists, 601, 657
- Ink Manager
- accessing, 621
  - aliasing spot colors, 622
  - converting spot colors, 621
  - exporting EPS files and, 499
  - exporting PDF files and, 509
  - overview, 621
  - printing and, 658
- inkjet printers, 626
- inks
- black inks, 58–59, 635–636, 673
  - black point compensation setting, 632
  - densities, 673
  - Ink Manager overview, 621
  - lists, 601, 657
  - matching, 58–59, 635–636
  - mixed ink swatches, 610–613
  - names, 671
  - overprinting black ink, 673
  - transparent objects and, 362–363
  - trapping. *See* trapping
  - turning on or off, 657
- Inks list, 601, 657
- Inline Background Color
- option, 52
- inline frames. *See also*
- anchored objects
  - creating, 423, 424–425
  - drop caps, 435–436
  - hanging side heads, 427–429, 436–437
  - limitations of, 424
  - moving, 425
  - overview, 422–424
  - removing, 429–430
  - selecting, 425, 429–430
- inline graphics
- importing in Excel files, 187
  - importing in Word files, 184
- Inline Input for Non-Latin
- text option, 42
- INMS files, 34
- Inner Bevel effect, 371, 372
- Inner Glow feature, 371, 372–373
- Inner Shadow effect, 370–371
- Input Method Editor (IME), 42
- insanity. *See* madness
- Insert Anchored Object
- command, 424
- Insert Break Character
- submenu, 155
- Insert Column(s) dialog box, 396
- “insert label” method, 699
- Insert Pages command and
- dialog box, 82–83
- Insert Row(s) dialog box, 395
- Insert Special Character
- submenu, 92, 155, 278
- Insert Table dialog box, 384
- Insert Variable submenu, 163
- Insert White Space submenu, 155
- Inset Spacing settings, 139
- insets, 139
- inside edges of clipping paths, 493
- INST files, 353
- instances of text variables.
- See also* text variables
  - converting to text, 168, 169–170
  - defined, 161
  - inserting, 163

Integrated Development Environment (IDE) (ExtendScript Toolkit), 691

Intent setting, 631–632

intents, 468, 631–632

interactive features

- animation, 727–728
- audio and video files, 723–727
- bookmarks, 714–715
- buttons, 715–721
- exporting interactive documents, 737
- exporting PDFs, 736–737
- in Flash files, 739–740
- hyperlinks, 707–714
- interactivity after export, 706
- Media panel, 725–727
- multi-state objects, 721–723
- overview, 706
- page transition effects, 733–734
- in PDF files, 504
- Presentation Mode, 735
- previewing, 734–735
- rollovers and states, 719–720
- slide shows, 721–723
- in SWF files, 737–738

Interactivity setting, 737–738

interchange formats, 181

Interface Preferences

- dialog box, 37–39

International Color Consortium (ICC), 509, 624

Intersect path operation, 339

intersecting objects, path

- operations and, 337–340

inverting

- arrowheads, 346–347
- clipping paths, 493
- path direction, 324–325, 348
- text wrap, 418, 420

invisible animated objects, 730

invisible buttons, 720

INX files, 76, 515

irritation, scripting and, 697

island spreads, 84–85

ISO standard PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, and PDF/X-4, 500. *See also* PDF graphics and files

Isolate Blending option, 365

Isolated positional form, 259

italic text, skewing compared to, 249, 250

itchy palms, overuse of effects and, 367

Item Information dialog box, 28

iTunes, 723

**J**

Japan Color setting, 627

Japan Prepress 2 setting, 627

Japanese text, 42

JavaScript scripts

- exporting XHTML and, 521
- ExtendScript, 691
- scripting examples, 700

JDF (Job Definition Format), 511

jerks who bump your arm, 335

Join options, 344, 345

joining

- join options, 344, 345
- open paths, 332

JPEG 2000 encoding, 506

JPEG files

- bitmap files, 460
- color spaces, 496
- converting during HTML export, 519
- display performance settings, 56
- exporting documents as, 495–496
- importing, 466–468
- interactive document settings, 737
- JPEG compression, 462
- PDF specifications, 506
- print settings, 658–660
- resolution, 496
- strengths and weaknesses of, 462

JPEG Quality pop-up menu, 737

JS files, 691

JScript, 693

JSof RegixBuddy, 228

JSX files, 691

Jump Object text wrap option, 417

Jump To Next Column text wrap option, 417

jumping. *See* navigating

justification

- around objects in middle of columns, 44
- hyphenation and, 286
- justified text, 44
- last line indents, 265
- letter spacing, 287–289
- paragraph alignment, 264
- really bad decisions and, 44
- tracking and, 248
- vertical justification, 141–143
- word spacing, 287–289

Justification dialog box, 287–289, 290, 427. *See also* justification

Justify (vertical justification method), 142, 143

Justify Text Next to an Object option, 44

**K**

Kahrel, Peter, 227

Katakana, 36

Keep Layer Visibility

- Overrides option, 471

keep options

- keeping lines of text together, 290–292
- overview, 290–292
- starting paragraphs, 292
- violations, 42–43

Keep Options dialog box, 42–43, 290–292

Keep Violations option, 42–43

Keep within Top/Bottom Column

- Bounds option, 434

Kent, Clark, 598

Kerning. *See also* tracking (spacing)

- automatic kerning, 244–246
- drop caps and, 276
- highlighting manual kerning, 44
- keyboard shortcuts, 47
- manual kerning, 44, 243–244
- Metrics method, 244–245
- multi-line composition, 283–285
- negative kerning, 276
- Optical method, 245–246
- overview, 243
- pair kerning, 244–246

preferences, 47  
 range kerning, 243, 246  
 removing, 244  
 in text outside text frames, 276  
 word spacing, 246

Keyboard Increments preferences  
 settings, 46–47

keyboard shortcuts. *See* shortcuts

Keyboard Shortcuts dialog box, 31

Knockout Group option, 365–366

Kodak PREPS, 667

Korean text, 42

Kuler panel, 619–620

Kvern, Olav Martin

accidents involving creation  
 dates and chapter  
 numbers, 166

aversion to blank left-  
 hand pages, 543

cross references and  
 tiny hearts, 177

descent towards madness  
 with even-odd fills, 334

difficulties spelling  
 “paragraph,” 203

dreams about formatting  
 and organizational  
 goodness, 700

as driven batty by Smart  
 Guides, 119

early childhood schoolward-  
 bound treks in freezing  
 cold weather, 333

equation-related panic, 690  
 favoritism towards furlongs  
 and stones, 45

gloomy outlook on life, 333

great expectations for  
 ragged lines, 289

as heartless towards  
 inoffensive controls, 34

indexer’s eternal affection  
 towards, 552

irritating and pedantic views  
 on drop caps, 436

K family name obsessions  
 of, 173

“Kvern” as common  
 household word, 201

left-leaning yet flattening-far-  
 right tendencies of, 678

as middle-of-the-road guy, 55

nightmares about PageMaker

3.0 documentation, 377

nights at *The Rocket*, 235

as not getting out enough, 700

obsession for geometric art, 702

obsolete esoteric

knowledge of, 170

old style numeral disagreements  
 with David, 260

side head self-experimentation  
 and, 436

as spending way too much time  
 digging in INMS files, 33

strong feelings about  
 subsetting fonts, 511

strong stomach of, save  
 for runts, 286

as subselector, 107

tab tzarism of, 268

uncaring attitude towards text  
 wrap and object effects, 34

unreasonable need to spell  
 “furi kuri,” 36

## L

LAB color model, 601, 617.

*See also* color models

Label property, page

items, 698–699

labels

master and layout pages, 80–81  
 figure captions, 451–454

Lake Minnetonka, 75

language

character formatting, 249–250  
 text, 50

versions of documents, 209

last line of paragraphs,

aligning, 264

Last Line Right Indent field, 265

“last name, first name”

order, 225, 228

Last on Page option, 164, 172

Last Page button, 3, 5

Last Page Number text

variable, 162, 164, 171

Late Night Software, 692

Latin text, fake, 159–161

Layer Comps command, 490

Layer Options dialog box, 127–128

Layer Visibility setting, 468

layered objects. *See* stacking

order of objects

layered strokes, 345–346

layers. *See also* stacking

order of objects

Acrobat layers, 736

after path operations, 338

AI and PDF files, 471

captions on, 453

copying between

publications, 130

copying objects to other  
 layers, 126, 130

creating, 123–124, 127–128

deleting, 125, 129

editing layer properties, 127–128  
 expanding or collapsing

view, 125

finding text in hidden, 214

finding text in locked, 213

groups and, 125, 131

hidden layers, 125–126, 128, 214

layer visibility options,  
 468, 471, 489

Layers panel, 11, 123–127

locked layers, 125, 126,  
 128, 213, 597

master page items and, 130

merging, 130

moving objects to other  
 layers, 126–127, 130

moving ruler guides to  
 other layers, 114, 115

multi-state object stacks, 721

naming, 124, 127

overview, 123

pasting objects, 128

PDF files and, 488–489, 503, 545

Photoshop files and, 462–463

printing options, 647

ruler guides on, 114, 115

selecting objects behind  
 other objects, 106

selection colors, 124, 127–128

Selection Proxy, 126–127

showing, 125–126, 128

stacking order of layers, 129

stacking order of objects,  
 120–122

target layer, 126

text wrap and, 121–122, 128

unlocking, 126

unused layers, 129

- Layers panel, 11, 123–127.
    - See also* layers
  - layout. *See* page layout; pages
  - Layout Adjustment command
    - and dialog box, 102–103
  - LayoutZone script, 472
  - leaders (tab leaders), 271–272
  - leading
    - applying to entire
      - paragraphs, 240
    - Auto paragraph leading,
      - 241, 289
    - baseline grid and, 140, 272–275
    - changing, 46–47
    - as character *vs.* paragraph
      - attribute, 40, 242
    - characters and, 40
    - custom baseline grids and, 273
    - first baseline positioning
      - and, 140
    - keyboard shortcuts, 46, 242
    - leading creep, avoiding, 273
    - overview, 240–241
    - paragraph settings, 40, 240
    - Skip by Leading option, 44–45
    - solid, 243
    - space before and after paragraph
      - adjustments, 143, 272, 273
    - text wrap and, 44
    - tips and tricks, 243
    - troubleshooting, 242
    - vertically-justified text and, 142
  - Leading method, baseline
    - positioning, 141
  - Leave Unchanged option
    - (color), 497
  - left double quotes (“), 39, 50, 183
  - left-hand pages, 543
  - Left Indent field, 265
  - left paragraph alignment, 264
  - left single quotes (‘), 39, 50
  - left tab stops, 268–269
  - legal document page numbering
    - schemes, 171
  - legs, gnawing off, 627
  - Let InDesign Determine
    - Color option, 636–637
  - letter spacing, 44, 246, 287–289.
    - See also* kerning; tracking
  - letterhead, 81
  - Level option, 549
  - Level Style option, 564–565
  - libraries
    - Library panel, 28
    - saving styles in, 318
    - swatches, 602, 606
  - Library panel, 28
  - ligatures, 157, 212, 255, 257, 258
  - Lighten transparency
    - blending mode, 364
  - lighting, optimizing for
    - color viewing, 625
  - Limit to Master Text
    - Frames option, 41
  - Lincoln, Abraham, 292
  - line art, 464, 507, 678
  - Line Art and Text Resolution
    - setting, 678
  - line breaks
    - balancing ragged lines, 290
    - manual breaks, 284
    - multi-line composition, 284
    - preventing, 256
    - soft returns, 263
    - story window, 194
    - text variables and, 162
  - Line tool, 17, 18, 22, 322
  - line weight for strokes, 343–344
  - linear gradients, 355
  - lines and line segments. *See*
    - also* paragraph rules; paths
    - (drawn); points; strokes
    - adding points to, 330
    - adjusting curve of, 326, 329–330
    - Bezier paths, 323–324, 328–332
    - button rollovers and
      - states, 719–720
    - control handles. *See*
      - control handles
    - corner or curve points, 325
    - dashed lines, 345, 346
    - drawing, 22, 327–328
    - drop shadows, 369
    - erasing segments, 336–337
    - feathering, 372–375
    - gradients. *See* gradients
      - and gradient fills
    - Line tool, 17, 18, 22, 322
    - overview, 324
    - removing points from, 330
    - stroke styles and patterns,
      - 350–353
    - stroke weight, 343–344
    - under text, 252–253
  - thinking like a line, 324
  - through text, 254–255
  - transforming, 569
- lines of text. *See also* line breaks
  - last line indents, 265
  - line counts, 27
  - line length, leading and, 243
  - nested line styles, 281–282
  - selecting, 40
- lines per inch, 463
- lining figures, 260–261
- link icon, 148
- Link To pop-up menu, 709–711
- Link Type checkbox, 474
- linked graphics and text files.
  - See also* linked text frames
  - checking before opening
    - files, 60
  - checking in Preflight, 683
  - color profiles, 633–634
  - default relink folder, 480–481
  - editing original graphics, 477
  - embedded graphics, 473
  - file information, 474
  - finding linked images on
    - disk, 478–479, 480
  - finding missing links, 60, 480
  - imported text files, 189
  - information about
    - linked files, 474
  - limitations of text updates, 189
  - linking to different file
    - types, 476–477
  - linking to Web sites, 474
  - Links panel, 11, 132,
    - 189, 473–477
  - listing fonts in, 261–262
  - metadata in, 488
  - missing graphics, 473, 475
  - modified (out-of-date) files, 473
  - opening documents with,
    - 472–473, 480
  - overview, 472
  - placing files, 60, 456
  - preferences, 479–481
  - preserving dimensions
    - when relinking, 61
  - relinking to different
    - files, 61, 475–476
  - updating, 60–61, 189, 475
  - XMP information, 478

linked text frames

- adding new text frames, 150, 151
- applying text formatting, 236
- copying and pasting, 150, 151
- deleting linked text frames, 149–150, 151
- displaying links between frames, 136, 147
- flowing text, 150, 152–154
- in ports, 145–146, 148
- link icon, 148
- linking frames, 145–149
- merging stories, 148
- order of text frames, 149
- out ports, 145–146, 148
- overset text, 146, 148
- overview, 145–146
- text flow icons, 150, 152–154
- unlinking, 149, 150, 151

links

- bookmarks in PDF files, 714–715
- buttons in PDF and SWF files, 715–721
- hyperlinks. *See* hyperlinks
- to master page items, 101
- OPI links. *See* OPI images and workflows
- between text and style definitions, 302, 305, 441
- to Web site images, 519
- to Web site videos, 724–725

Links folder, 473

Links panel

- actions, 479–481
- locked objects and, 132
- overview, 473–475
- shortcuts, 11
- text files and, 189

List view, Library panel, 28

lists. *See also* tables of contents

- bulleted and numbered, 292–300
- of fonts, 261–262
- hanging indents in, 266–267
- named lists, 297–300
- technical-style numbering, 297

lithography, invention of, 641

live captions, 451, 452, 488

Live Corners feature, 341

Live Distribute feature, 595

Live Screen Drawing option, 39

Load All Text Styles

- command, 317

Load Character Styles

- command, 317

Load Master Pages Alert

- dialog box, 95

Load Object Styles command, 442

Load Paragraph Styles

- command, 317

Load Table and Cell Styles

- command, 416

Load Table Styles command, 416

Load Text Variables dialog

- box, 167, 168

loading. *See also* importing;

- opening

- character styles, 317
- Eyedropper tool, 24, 25
- master pages, 95
- object styles, 442
- paragraph styles, 317
- stroke styles, 353
- table and cell styles, 416
- text styles, 317
- text variables, 166–168
- workspaces, 34–35
- XML tags, 532–533

local flattener presets, 680

local formatting and overrides

- cell formatting, 415
- character styles, 305, 307
- deleting styles and, 307
- master page items and, 100–101
- object formatting, 440–441
- organizational goodness and, 700
- paragraph styles, 309, 310
- removing, 305, 309, 310, 441
- synchronizing book documents and, 542
- table formatting, 409, 415
- text formatting overrides, 309, 310, 700
- vs. global formatting, 301

locations

- coordinates in panels, 573–574
- printer's marks, 666–667

Lock command, 132

Lock Guides command or option, 116–117, 128

Lock Layer icon or option, 126

Lock Others command, 126

Lock Position command, 116

Lock/Unlock icon, 126

Lock Zero Point command, 7

locking

- guides, 112, 116–117, 128
- layers, 103, 125, 126, 128, 597
- lock icons, 68, 126, 132, 392, 540
- objects, 103, 132, 597
- PDF files, 512–513
- positions, 116, 132
- stories, 214
- zero point, 7

logging text file errors, 188–189

long documents

- books. *See* books
- indexes. *See* indexes and index entries
- table of contents. *See* tables of contents

lookaheads and lookbehinds (GREP methods), 224

Looney Farm, 567. *See also* madness

looping

- animation, 732
- movie files, 725
- sound files, 726

Lorum Ipsum text, 159–161

lossless and lossy compression, 462, 507

Low Resolution flattener

- style, 677, 678

lpi (lines per inch), 463

Luminosity transparency

- blending mode, 364

LZW compression, 462

## M

m shortcut, 451

Macintosh scripting

- systems, 691–692

macros. *See* scripts and scripting

madness

- blinking cursors and, 106
- even-odd fills and, 334
- final pages of financial and legal documents and, 171
- next odd page and, 543
- non-linear and non-modal software and, 567

press operators faced

- with maximum ink coverages and, 363

- previewing anchored objects and, 432
  - printing tiles and, 651
  - screening angles and frequencies and, 656
- magical nested styles, 279
- Magnet button, 269
- Magnification field, 4, 65
- magnifying view. *See* zooming in or out
- mailto hyperlinks, 710
- Maivald, James, 534
- “Make It Look Good” option, 469
- MakeGrid example script, 695
- Manage Presets dialog box, 732
- manual kerning, 243–244
- manual line breaks, 284
- manual page breaks in Word file, 184
- manual text flow, 68, 152–153
- Manual Tiling option, 650
- manual trapping, 622–623
- Map Tags to Styles dialog box, 530
- mapping
  - bullets or numbering to XHTML tags, 518
  - paragraph styles and XML tags, 530
  - paragraph styles from Word to InDesign, 185
- margin guides, 48–49, 104, 108, 504, 647
- margins. *See also* insets
  - layout adjustment settings, 104
  - margin guides, 48–49, 104, 108, 504, 647
  - master spread settings, 94
  - multiple columns and, 145
  - optical margin alignment, 318–320
  - setting in New Document dialog box, 70, 71
  - setting page layout options, 82
- Margins and Columns dialog box, 82, 111
- markers
  - anchor markers, 424, 434–435
  - cross references, 177
  - footnote reference markers, 205
  - index markers, 561
  - page number markers, 92
  - section markers, 92
  - text variable instances, 161
- marking GREP subexpressions, 225–226
- Marks and Bleeds pane (Print dialog box), 651–653
- marks, printer’s. *See* printer’s marks
- markup tags. *See* tagged text
- markups (change tracking), 184–185, 197
- marquees (selection rectangles), 104, 114
- master documents, in books, 541
- Master Options dialog box, 99
- master page items. *See also* master spreads and pages
  - applying master spread edits, 99, 101–104
  - in converted PageMaker files, 75
  - finding text in, 214
  - hiding, 100
  - hyperlinks, 714
  - layers and, 130
  - links to, 101
  - overriding, 100–101
- Master Page Overlay option, 88
- master pages. *See* master spreads and pages
- Master Password setting (Permissions Password setting), 512
- master spreads and pages. *See also* master page items
  - applying edits to document pages, 99, 101–104
  - applying to document pages, 83, 97, 99
  - basing on other master spreads, 97, 98
  - changing or moving in Pages panel, 79–80, 82
  - color labels, 80–81
  - copying from other publications, 96–97
  - creating, 95, 96
  - deleting, 99–100
  - divider in Pages panel, 79
  - duplicating, 83, 95
  - editing, 99
  - hiding items from, 100
  - importing, 95–97
  - inheritance, 97
  - layout options, 77–78, 99
  - master page icons, 79
  - merged data templates, 526
  - multiple page sizes, 88
  - None master page, 83
  - overriding master page items, 100–101
  - overview, 93–94
  - printing master pages, 647
  - QuarkXPress users and, 94–95
  - reapplying, 101
  - sections and, 93
  - text wrap and, 420
- Mastering Regular Expressions, 227
- matching
  - color. *See* color management
  - finding and changing text with GREP methods, 223–228
  - font characters, 159
  - style names in groups, 316
- math, anxiety about, 573
- Matt’s Matrix, 462, 463
- Maximize button, 3
- Measure tool, 18, 24, 25
- measurements
  - Measure tool, 18, 24, 25, 26
  - overriding in panels, 16, 45
  - preferences and settings, 45–47
  - rulers, 6
- measures. *See* columns on pages
- media files in InDesign
  - PDF files, 706
- Media panel, 725–727
- Medial positional form, 259
- medication
  - color management and, 624
  - indexing and, 552
- Medium Resolution flattener style, 677
- megillahs, downloading, 502
- memories, bad, Block cursors and, 55
- memory, system, downloadable fonts and, 661
- menu bar, 3
- Menu Customization dialog box, 32–33
- menus and menu items
  - context menus, 29
  - customizing, 32–33
  - items in Quick Apply list, 450, 451
- Merge Cells command, 398–399

- Merge Identically Named Layers
  - on Export option, 545
- Merge Layers command, 130
- Merge User Dictionary into
  - Document setting, 50
- merging
  - dictionaries, 50
  - layers, 130, 545
  - objects with path
    - operations, 337–340
  - panels, 13–14
  - stories, 148
  - swatches, 615–616
  - table cells, 398–399
- Mesopotamian printing, 641
- Messages section, 670
- metacharacters. *See also*
  - special characters
  - escaping, 225
  - Find/Change dialog box, 216
  - GREP methods and, 223–225
  - in nested styles, 278
  - Posix metacharacters, 225
- metadata
  - captions, 162, 164,
    - 174–177, 451, 452
  - creating, 486–488
  - defined, 174
  - editing, 176
  - exporting with EPUB
    - files, 522–523
  - JDF (Job Definition
    - Format), 511
  - searching for in files, 488
  - text variables, 162, 164, 174–177
  - troubleshooting messages, 454
- Metadata Caption variable,
  - 162, 164, 174–177
- metallic inks, 610
- Method pop-up menu, 210
- Metrics kerning method, 244–245
- Microsoft Excel files, 181,
  - 186–188, 385
- Microsoft scripting systems, 692
- Microsoft Word files
  - columns in, 184
  - endnotes in, 183
  - fast save problems, 185
  - footnotes in, 183
  - graphics in, 184
  - importing, 181, 182–185,
    - 385, 560–561
  - indexes in, 183
  - manual page breaks in, 184
  - styles in, 184, 318
  - tables in, 183
  - troubleshooting placing
    - Word files, 185
    - Word's deadly features, 185
- Min field, Text Frame Options
  - dialog box, 141
- Mini Bridge, 6
- Minimize button, 3
- Minimum Space Before First
  - Footnote option, 207
- Minimum Vertical Offset field
  - (Pasteboard Options field), 49
- Minus Back path operation, 339
- minutes, in text variables, 165
- mirrored pages, printing, 655
- missing graphics or documents,
  - 60, 473, 480, 540
- Missing link icon, 473
- Missing Profiles setting, 630
- misspelled words, 51–52, 203–204
- Miter Join option, 345
- Miter Limit setting, 344–345
- mixed ink groups, 611–613
- mixed ink swatches, 610–613
- Modification Date text
  - variable, 162, 164
- modified graphics or
  - documents, 473, 540
- modifier keys, 190–192
- moiré patterns, 611, 656
- Monitor Color option (color
  - management preset), 627
- monitors. *See* screen display
- monochrome images (bi-level),
  - 464, 506, 660
- months, in text variables, 165
- motion paths
  - in animation, 728, 729
  - converting paths to, 730
  - drawing, 731
  - editing, 730
- motion presets, 728, 732
- mounted beggars, 534
- mouse pointing devices
  - mouse events, 716
  - mouse wheels, 67
  - selecting text with, 191
- MOV files, 723
- Move dialog box, 577–578
- Move Page button, 96
- Move Pages command, 86
- Moved Text option, 53
- movies. *See* video files
- moving. *See also* navigating;
  - transformations
  - around or through interface.
    - See* navigating
  - document fonts to other
    - computers, 687–688
  - documents in books, 537
  - inline frames, 425
  - items
    - with arrow keys, 578
    - by dragging, 576
    - with Free Transform tool, 578
    - Gap tool and, 596
    - between layers, 126–127, 130
    - with Move dialog
      - box, 577–578
    - with Transform or Control
      - panels, 576
    - while duplicating, 578
  - layers between publications, 130
  - linked files, 472–473
  - pages in publications, 83–86
  - points, 328, 330
  - ruler guides, 114–115
  - text on paths, 443
  - zero point, 6–7, 45
- MP3 files, 723, 726
- MP4 files, 723, 724
- MPEG files, 723, 725
- MRK files, 667. *See also* PMD files
- Multi-file place icon, 68
- multi-level numbering, 297
- multi-line composition, 283–285
- multi-state objects
  - button actions for, 718
  - converting to independent
    - objects, 723
  - creating states, 722
  - duplicating states, 722
  - hiding, 723
  - navigating through, 722
  - resetting, 723
  - slide shows, 721–723
- multi-stroke patterns, 345–346
- multi-touch gestures, 38
- Multichannel mode
  - (Photoshop), 462
- multiline searches, GREP
  - methods and, 224
- multimedia in PDF files. *See*
  - interactive features



- multiple columns, headlines
  - for, 143–145
- Multiple Intersecting Links
  - warning, 454
- Multiple Master fonts, 40
- multiple monitors, money and, 9
- multiple page sizes in
  - publications, 86–89
- multiple paragraph rules, 381–382
- multiple publications,
  - combining. *See* books
- Multiply Record Layout
  - setting, 528
- multiple users, Book panel
  - and, 540–541
- multiple windows, opening, 7–9
- Multiply transparency blending
  - mode, 363, 365
- Murphy, Chris, 624
- Mystic Rose script, 704

## N

- Nadesico*, 366
- Name metadata, 452
- named colors, 600–601, 605.
  - See also* swatches
- named hyperlinks, 707, 712
- named lists, 297–300
- names
  - buttons, 716
  - displaying in text variables, 174
  - fonts, 238, 239
  - indexing, 557
  - layers, 124, 127
  - lists, 297–300
  - matching in groups, 316
  - mixed ink groups, 611
  - named and unnamed
    - colors, 600–601, 605
  - reordering first and
    - last, 225, 228
  - text variables, 163
- nauseousness, last word
  - hyphenation and, 286
- navigating
  - to another note, 198
  - to another page, 5, 67
  - keyboard shortcuts, 67
  - moving around on pages, 18, 26
  - pages in Preview panel, 734

- through slide images, 722
- via bookmarks in PDF
  - files, 714–715
- via hyperlinks, 713–714
- video navigation points, 726
- “nearest neighbor”
  - interpolation, 679
- negative creep values, 669
- Negative option, 655
- Neo-Atlantean super science, 141
- Neon example script, 695
- nested bookmarks, 715
- nested groups, 109
- nested index format, 564
- nested objects in
  - transformations, 576
- nested styles, 276–283, 314
- .NET VB, 692
- networked workgroups,
  - books and document
    - management, 540–541
- New Book dialog box, 536
- New Cell Style dialog box, 411–412
- New Character Style dialog
  - box, 303–304
- New Color Swatch dialog box,
  - 605. *See also* swatches
- New Condition dialog box, 210
- New Cross Reference dialog
  - box, 177, 178
- New Doc Sizes.txt file, 71
- New Document dialog
  - box, 70–73, 83
- New Entry button, 553
- New Glyph Set command, 160
- New Gradient Swatch dialog
  - box, 357, 358, 607–610
- New Grep Style button, 282
- New Hyperlink dialog box, 711
- New Layer dialog box,
  - 124, 127–128
- New Master dialog box, 95
- New Mixed Ink Group
  - dialog box, 612
- New Mixed Ink Swatch
  - dialog box, 611
- New Note button, 198
- New Object Style dialog
  - box, 437–439
- New Page Reference dialog
  - box, 553–557

- New Paragraph Style button
  - or dialog box, 308
- New Paragraph Style pane, 302
- New PDF Export Preset
  - dialog box, 514
- New Print Preset dialog box, 665
- new publications, creating
  - bypassing New Document
    - dialog box, 73
  - converting older
    - InDesign files, 74
  - converting PageMaker
    - files, 74, 75
  - converting QuarkXPress
    - files, 74–75
  - document defaults, 70–73
  - New Document dialog
    - box, 70–73
- New Section dialog box, 91
- New Set button or dialog box, 31
- New Stroke Style dialog
  - box, 350–353
- New Style Group button, 315
- New Table Style dialog
  - box, 413–414
- New Tag button, 532
- New Text Variable dialog box, 167
- New Tint Swatch dialog box, 607
- New Window feature, 194
- New Workspace dialog box, 35
- Newsprint profile, 637–638
- Next Page button, 3, 5
- Nigel, of Spinal Tap, control
  - named for, 286
- Ninas, 702–703
- Nirvana, negative creep
  - values and, 669
- No Break option or command, 256
- No Breaks option or
  - command, 184
- No Color Conversion option, 638
- No CSS option, 520
- No Data From Link warning, 454
- No Intersecting Link warning, 454
- “no pub state,” 62
- No Text Wrap option, 417
- Noise feather corner option, 373
- noise in drop shadows, 370
- non-breaking hyphens, 156
- non-breaking spaces, 156
- non-Latin text, 42

non-printing objects  
 buttons, 716, 721  
 exporting PDF files  
   containing, 504  
 frames, 550  
 including in table of  
   contents, 550  
 printing, 647  
 special characters, finding  
   and changing, 216  
 non-rectangular frames, 143  
 None master page, 83  
 None object style, 440, 441  
 None page number entry, 548  
 Normal transparency  
   blending mode, 363  
 Normal View Mode indicator, 18  
 North American Prepress  
   2 setting, 627  
 Note tool, 18, 21, 198  
 notes  
   Adobe InCopy and, 197  
   checking spelling, 52  
   color, 52  
   converting to or from text, 199  
   creating, 197–199  
   deleting, 199  
   displaying and editing, 199  
   endnotes, 209  
   Library items and, 28  
   navigating through, 198  
   Note tool, 18, 21, 198  
   Notes panel, 197–199  
   preferences and settings, 52  
   Tooltips and, 52  
   users and, 198  
 Notes panel, 197–199  
 Notes Preferences dialog box, 52  
 nudge keys (arrow keys), 46, 578  
 Num Lock key, 191  
 Number of Characters field, 275  
 Number of Lines field, 275  
 number of pages, setting, 70  
 Number of Recent Items to  
   Display option, 60  
 Number of Sides field, 22  
 numbered lists  
   applying numbering,  
     293, 295–297  
   continuing numbers, 295  
   converting numbers  
     to paths, 422

  converting to normal text, 300  
   formatting numbers, 295–297  
   hanging indents in, 266–267  
   named lists, 297–300  
   positioning numbers, 297  
   removing numbers, 300  
   starting list numbers, 295  
 Numbered Paragraphs  
   option, 549–550  
 numbering  
   absolute numbers, 646  
   across multiple documents, 300  
   chapters, 161, 164, 543–544, 546  
   exporting to XHTML, 518  
   figures, 162, 297, 299  
   lists. *See* numbered lists  
   lurking fonts and, 262  
   order of frames on  
     pages and, 298  
   pages. *See* page numbering  
   paragraph styles and, 300  
   paragraphs, 549–550  
   sections, 36, 543, 646  
   styles, 164, 206  
   tables, 297  
   tables of contents and, 549–550  
   updating numbers, 543–544  
 Numbering & Section Options  
   dialog box, 91, 543  
 numbering pages. *See*  
   page numbering  
 Numbering Style option, 164, 206  
 numbers  
   Arabic numerals, 90, 92  
   converting CMYK or  
     RGB, 508, 638  
   converting to paths, 422  
   full-height numerals, 260–261  
   lining figures, 260–261  
   numerals, 249, 260–261, 296  
   old style numerals, 260–261  
   ordinal numbers, 258  
   pages. *See* page numbering  
   prefixes, page numbers, 91–92  
   preserving CMYK or RGB, 508,  
     630, 633, 635, 637–638  
   removing, 300  
   roman numerals, 90, 92, 296  
   sorting in indexes, 562  
   text variables, 165  
   updating, 543–544  
 numerator characters, 260

## O

Object Layer Options  
   dialog box, 489  
 Object States panel, 721–723  
 object styles. *See also* objects  
   applying, 440–441  
   basing on existing styles, 439  
   breaking links between  
     objects and styles, 441  
   creating, 437–440  
   default, 440  
   deleting, 441–442  
   editing, 441  
   importing from other  
     documents, 442  
   local object formatting  
     and, 440–441  
 Object Styles panel,  
   437, 438, 440  
 Quick Apply feature, 448–451  
 rearranging in panel, 440  
 shortcuts for, 439  
 summary of settings, 439  
 updating, 437  
 Object Styles panel, 11,  
   437, 438, 440  
 objects. *See also* object styles  
   aligning, 593–594  
   applying effects to, 367–368  
   converting to motion paths, 730  
   converting to shapes, 340  
   copying between layers, 130  
   deselecting, 106  
   distributing, 594–597  
   drop shadows, 369  
   duplicating with Step  
     and Repeat, 578  
   exporting as snippets, 516  
   finding and replacing  
     formatting in, 133–134  
   fitting on screen, 63–66  
   flipping or reflecting,  
     447–448, 586  
   frequently-used, 28  
   grids of, 592–593  
   grouping or ungrouping, 131  
   hiding, 598  
   location, 28  
   locking object positions, 132  
   moving. *See* moving  
   multi-state objects, 718, 721–723  
   pasting to original layers, 128

- positioning ruler guides
  - around, 114
- removing from frames, 700–702
- resizing. *See* resizing
- rotating. *See* rotating
- screen display of, 55
- selecting. *See* selecting objects
- stacking order. *See* stacking
  - order of objects
- subselecting, 107–108, 131
- transforming multiple, 571–572
- wrapping text around.
  - See* text wrap
- Objects Move with Page option, 89
- odd and even pages, 543, 646–647
- odd-even fills, 334–335
- Odd Pages Only option, 647
- Offset setting (leading), 141
- Offset setting (printer's marks), 653
- Offset setting (printing), 648
- offsets
  - captions, 453
  - leading, 141
  - printer's marks, 653
  - printer's paper offset, 648
  - text wrap, 417
- old style numerals, 260–261
- Omit For OPI setting, 499, 511, 662
- On Blur event, 716
- On Focus event, 716
- On Page Load event, 728
- On Roll Off event, 720
- On Roll Over event, 720, 728
- on-screen colors, 602
- On Self Click event, 728
- online files, 502
- online help, 4
- Only Align First Line to
  - Grid feature, 275
- opacity
  - animated objects, 730, 732
  - drop shadows, 368
  - gradient stops and, 610
- Open a File dialog box, 72, 73
- open (<) angle bracket, 233
- Open Copy option, 73
- Open document status icons, 540
- Open Documents as
  - Tabs option, 38
- Open File action, 718
- Open In Full Screen Mode
  - option, 737
- Open Original option, 73
- Open Path button, 340
- open paths
  - arrowheads and tailfeathers, 346–347
  - closing, 331–332, 340
  - erasing line segments, 336–337
  - joining, 332
- opening
  - checking links before opening
    - documents, 60
  - closed paths, 331–332
  - copies of files, 73
  - documents as tabs, 38
  - documents with links, 472–473, 480
  - files, 73–75, 718
  - multiple windows, 7–9
  - original files, 73, 477
  - Reader to view PDF files, 503
  - stationery, 73
  - templates, 73
- OpenType fonts
  - character settings, 36
  - contextual ligatures, 258
  - denominator characters, 260
  - finding glyphs, 228–230
  - fractions, 257–258
  - glyphs in, 158
  - ligatures, 255, 257
  - numbers of characters in, 36
  - numerator characters, 260
  - old style numerals, 260–261
  - OpenType submenu, 238
  - ordinal numbers, 258
  - overview, 256–261
  - positional forms, 259
  - slashed zero characters, 258
  - stylistic sets, 259
  - superscript and subscript, 255–256, 259
  - Swash feature, 258
  - titling alternates, 258
- OpenType submenu, 238
- operating system failures, 77
- OPI Image Replacement
  - setting, 499, 662–663
- OPI images and workflows
  - exporting EPS graphics, 499
  - exporting PDF graphics, 511
  - image links, 468–469
  - importing EPS graphics, 468–469
  - printer settings, 662–663
  - transparency issues, 676
- Optical kerning method, 245–246
- optical margin adjustment, 276
- optical size in multiple
  - master fonts, 40
- Optimize for Fast Web
  - View option, 502
- Optimized Display setting, 55
- Optimized Subsampling
  - option, 658–659
- optimizing
  - images for printing, 658–660
  - images for Web display, 502
  - screen display, 55, 465
- order
  - of animated objects, 731
  - of linked text frames, 147–149
  - of objects on page. *See* stacking
    - order of objects
- ordinal numbers, formatting, 258
- organizational goodness, local
  - formatting and, 700
- orientation
  - document pages, 77–78, 102
  - mixing in books, 536
  - output pages, 648
- Orientation setting, 648
- original files, opening, 73, 477
- ornamental characters, 159, 228–230, 302
- orphans, preventing, 290–292
- OSA/AppleEvents, 693
- OSA JavaScript, 693
- Other Units options, 46
- out-of-gamut colors, 607, 617, 631–632
- Out of Gamut warning, 607, 617
- out ports, 145–146, 148
- Outer Bevel effect, 371, 372
- Outer Glow feature, 371, 372–373
- outline fonts, 420–422

outlines. *See also* compound paths  
 converting strokes to  
   outlines, 679  
 converting text to outlines,  
   420–422, 679  
 transparency flattener and, 679  
 output. *See also* exporting;  
   printing  
   black inks and, 58–59  
   dates on, 162, 164, 170  
   output providers. *See*  
     commercial printers;  
     imagesetters and  
     service providers  
   PDF export options, 508–509  
   print options, 653–658  
   profile information, 509  
   resolution and, 505–506  
   settings for, 653–658  
 Output All Blacks Accurately  
   option, 58–59  
 Output All Blacks As Rich  
   Blacks option, 58–59  
 Output Condition Name field, 509  
 Output Date text variable,  
   162, 164, 170  
 output destination profiles, 509  
 Output Intent Profile  
   Name option, 509  
 output options (PDF  
   export), 508–509  
 Output pane (Print dialog  
   box), 653–658  
 output providers. *See* commercial  
   printers; imagesetters  
   and service providers  
 oval dots in stroke patterns, 352  
 overflow text. *See* overset text  
 overlapping objects. *See*  
   stacking order of objects  
 Overlay transparency  
   blending mode, 363  
 Overprint [Black] Swatch  
   at 100% option, 59  
 Overprint Preview command, 255  
 overprinting. *See also* trapping  
   black inks, 59, 673  
   previewing, 673  
   simulating, 496, 509, 658  
   strokes, 347  
   transparency issues, 676  
 overrides. *See also* local  
   formatting and overrides

cell formatting, 415  
 character styles, 305, 307  
 deleting styles and, 307  
 graphic display settings,  
   465–466  
 layer visibility and, 471, 490  
 local vs. global formatting, 301  
 master page items, 100–101  
 measurement overrides, 16  
 object formatting, 440–441  
 organizational goodness  
   and, 700  
 paragraph styles, 310, 700  
 preserving overrides in  
   imported text, 184  
 removing, 305, 309,  
   310, 441, 700  
 synchronizing book  
   documents and, 542  
 table formatting, 409, 415  
 text formatting, 183,  
   309, 310, 700  
 units of measurement, 16, 45  
 overset text  
   + sign, out port, 146  
   applying text formatting to, 236  
   from data merges, 528  
   finding text in, 215  
   placing, 148, 149  
   Smart Text Reflow option, 41  
   in table cells, 386  
 overwriting older book  
   documents, 538

## P

p shortcut, 451  
 Package Book for Print  
   command, 545  
 Package for GoLive feature, 517  
 padlock icons, 68, 126,  
   132, 392, 540  
 Pag3 tool, 20  
 Page field and Page pop-up  
   menu, 3, 5  
 Page Information option, 652  
 page items  
   applying master spread edits  
     to pages, 101–104  
   applying transparency, 361–362  
   feathering, 372–375  
   Label property, 698–699  
   on master spreads, 93–95

page layout  
   adjusting layouts, 99, 101–104  
   applying master edits to  
     pages, 101–104  
   arranging pages in  
     spreads, 83–86  
   column guides and settings,  
     108, 111–112  
   document defaults, 70–73  
   drag and drop text editing  
     and, 41, 192–193  
   grids, 119–120  
   grouping objects and, 131  
   guides, 108–119  
   layers, 123–130  
   locking object positions, 132  
   margin guides and settings, 108  
   master spreads, 93–100  
   overriding master page  
     items, 100–101  
   page orientation, 77–78  
   page size, 70, 71, 77–78,  
     101–104, 536, 646  
   ruler guides, 108, 112–117  
   sections, 90–92  
   setting layout options,  
     70–73, 77–78  
   Smart Guides, 108  
   XML in page layout  
     process, 530–531  
 Page Limit Per Document  
   setting, 529  
 Page Number options (tables  
   of contents), 548  
 page numbering. *See also*  
   page numbers  
   absolute numbers, 646  
   books and, 536, 539, 542–543  
   markers as text variables, 161  
   numbering pages, 90–93  
   odd and even page  
     numbers, 543  
   page number markers, 92  
   preferences, 36  
   prefixes on numbers, 91–92  
   printing page ranges, 645–646  
   renumbering, 536, 539  
   sections and, 90–92  
   starting page numbers, 71, 90  
   systems, 92  
 Page Numbering preferences  
   settings, 36

- page numbers
  - absolute numbers, 646
  - index page references, 553–557, 559, 561–562
  - index styles, 554
  - markers as text variables, 161
  - Page X of Y numbering schemes, 171
  - starting page numbers, 90
  - tables of contents styles, 548
  - text variables for, 162
- page orientation, 77–78
- Page Position pop-up menu, 649
- page ranges
  - exporting PDF files, 501–502
  - index entries, 554–556
  - printing, 645–646
- page references, index entries, 553–557, 559, 561–562
- page size
  - editing, 79
  - layout adjustment settings, 101–104
  - mixing sizes in books, 536, 646
  - setting up, 70, 71, 77–78
- Page tool, 17, 18
- page transitions
  - exporting to Flash files, 739
  - exporting to PDF files, 737
  - exporting to SWF files, 737–738
  - Page Transitions panel, 733–734
  - playing sounds, 726
  - previewing, 734–735
- Page Transitions option, 737
- Page Transitions panel, 733–734
- Page X of Y numbering schemes, 171
- PageControl plug-in, 668
- PageMaker 3.0
  - documentation, 377
- PageMaker files, 74, 75, 233–234
- pages. *See also* Pages panel
  - adding to publications, 82–83
  - applying master edits to pages, 101–104
  - applying master pages or spreads, 83, 97, 99
  - arranging in Pages panel, 79–80
  - arranging in spreads, 83–86
  - breaks, 42, 184, 290–292
  - color labels, 80–81
  - coordinates on, 573–574
  - creating, 79
  - curled page effect, 738
  - defaults for, 62
  - deleting, 79
  - duplicating pages and page spreads, 83
  - flipping automatically, 737
  - hiding master items, 100
  - hyperlinks to, 710, 711–712
  - icons, 81, 82
  - illustrated, 3
  - information about, 652
  - items on. *See* page items
  - jumping to with buttons, 716
  - layers, 123–130
  - layout. *See* page layout
  - multiple sizes in publications, 86–89, 646
  - navigating through, 5, 62–67
  - numbering. *See* page numbering
  - orientation, 77–78
  - overriding master page items, 100–101
  - pasteboard and, 4–5
  - PDF and SWF page transition effects, 725, 726
  - playing movies on display, 725
  - playing sounds on display, 726
  - selecting, 81–82
  - setting number of, 70
  - setting up, 77–78
  - shuffling, 83–86
  - size. *See* page size
  - Smart Text Reflow option and, 41
  - thumbnails of, 80
  - transition effects, 733–734
  - zero point setting, 45
- Pages panel
  - adding pages to publications, 82–83
  - applying master pages and spreads, 97, 99
  - arranging pages, 79–80
  - creating master spreads, 95, 97, 98
  - divider in, 79
  - illustrated, 79
  - options, 80
  - overview, 78–82
  - selecting pages, 81–82
  - selecting spreads, 81–82
  - shortcuts, 11
- Pages Panel Options dialog box, 80
- Pages setting (EPS export), 496
- Pages setting (PDF import), 469–470
- pain relievers, typography and, 194
- pair kerning, 244–246
- panels. *See also* names of specific panels
  - bringing to front, 10
  - closing, 10
  - combining and separating, 13–14
  - display options, 12, 38
  - displaying as icons, 38
  - dragging objects under, 66
  - floating panels, 3
  - focus in, 9–10
  - formulas and arithmetic in, 16
  - hiding, 10, 38
  - multiple monitor splurging and, 9
  - overriding units of measurement, 16
  - overview, 9–17
  - panel groups, 13–14
  - reducing to icons, 12
  - resizing, 12
  - saving arrangements as workspaces, 34–35
  - small or large panel rows, 15–16
  - snapping into position, 13
  - stacking, 13–14
  - tabbed panels, 13–14
  - zipping and unzipping, 10
- panic, pre-deadline, 200
- panning graphics, 483
- Pantone inks, 606
- Pantone swatch books, 625–626
- Pantone swatch libraries, 602
- Pantone Two-Color Selector, 610
- paper
  - color, 608, 635, 636
  - offset, specifying, 648
  - orientation, 648
  - stock, 625, 632
- Paper Size pop-up menu, 648
- Paper swatch, 608
- Paper White option, 635
- Paragraph Composer, Adobe, 264, 284, 289
- paragraph counts, 27

paragraph formatting. *See also* character formatting; paragraph styles alignment, 264, 275 applying formatting to all characters, 263 Auto paragraph leading, 241, 289 baseline grid and, 272–275 boxes around paragraphs, 399, 400 bulleted lists, 293–295 carriage returns and leading, 242 column breaks, 290–292 drop caps, 275–276 Eyedropper tool and, 24, 25 first line alignment, 275 first line indentation, 265–267 hanging indents, 266–267 hanging text outside text frames, 276 highlighting composition problems, 290 hyphenation controls, 285–287 indents, 265–267 justification, 287–289 keep options, 290–292 last line alignment, 264 leading. *See* leading letter spacing, 287–289 multi-line composition, 283–285 numbered lists, 293, 295–300 overview, 262–263 page breaks and, 290–292 Paragraph panel, 11, 264 paragraph rules. *See* paragraph rules selecting text for formatting, 263 spaces between words, 40–41 spacing between paragraphs, 143, 144–145, 272 styles. *See* paragraph styles tabs and tab stops, 267–272 tinting paragraphs, 380–381 widows and orphans, preventing, 290–292 word spacing, 287–289 Paragraph panel, 11, 264. *See also* paragraph formatting

paragraph rules applying, 378 converting text to outlines and, 422 footnotes and, 209 hanging indents and, 381 multiple rules, 381–382 options and guidelines, 378–382 positioning, 379 rule and stroke width, 380 tinting paragraphs with, 380–381 Paragraph Rules dialog box, 378–380 Paragraph Spacing Limit setting, 143 Paragraph Style option, 207 paragraph style tags (PageMaker), 233–234 paragraph styles. *See also* Paragraph Styles panel; tables applying to index entries, 564–565 applying to paragraphs, 302, 309–310 Basic Paragraph style, 307–308 basing on example text, 308 basing on existing styles, 314–315 bullets and numbers in, 300 captions, 453 copying from other publications, 317–318 creating, 308–309 deleting, 313 deleting text with specified styles, 222 dreams about local formatting and, 700 floppy disk icon, 318 fonts in, 261–262 footnote styles, 207 imported text styles, 188 links between text and style definitions, 302, 305 modifying, 311 names out of order, 302 nested GREP styles, 282–283 nested styles, 276–283, 314 Next Style feature, 311–313 PageMaker tags, 233–234

paragraph rules. *See* paragraph rules parent-child style relationships, 314–315 Quick Apply feature, 448–451 removing from text, 310 removing overrides, 700 resetting to base styles, 315 saving in libraries, 318 setting defaults, 62 split columns, 145 Story Editor and, 196 style groups, 315–317 styles, defined, 301 synchronizing book documents, 541–542 tables of contents and, 545 text variables and, 162 unused styles, 313 Paragraph Styles panel. *See also* paragraph styles applying and modifying styles, 309–313 importing styles, 317–318 shortcuts, 11 styles, defined, 301 paragraphs counting, 27 as cross reference destinations, 177 formatting. *See* paragraph formatting numbered, in tables of content, 549–550 page ranging for index entries, 556 re-ragging, 289–290 selecting, 40 sorting, 696 styles. *See* paragraph styles tinting, 380–381 paranoia, practicality and, 512 parent-child style relationships, 314–315, 439 parent master spreads, 97, 98 parentheses, 225 passwords, exporting PDF files, 512–513 Paste In Place command, 335 Paste Remembers Layers option, 128

- pasteboard
  - contents falling off of, 483
  - increasing size of, 49
  - indexed text on, 556
  - items in converted files, 75
  - overview, 4–5
  - ruler guides and, 112
- Pasteboard Options field, 49
- Pasteboard XTension, 49
- pasting. *See also* copying
  - duplicating objects, 335
  - graphic files, 456
  - linked text frames, 150, 151
  - objects into states, 722
  - objects to original layers, 128
  - paths or PDF data, 61
  - replacing text with Clipboard
    - contents, 221
  - retaining or losing
    - formatting, 61
  - selecting objects pasted inside
    - other objects, 20
  - tables, 61
  - text, 61, 136, 180–181
- path operations, 337–340.
  - See also* paths (drawn); transformations
- path text
  - alignment, 448
  - attaching text to paths, 442–448
  - effects, 444–448
  - flipping, 444, 447–448
  - moving, 443
  - To Path options, 448
  - Path Type tool, 17, 18, 21, 442
  - removing text from paths, 448
  - spacing options, 448
- path type. *See* path text
- Path Type tool, 17, 18, 21, 442
- PathEffects example script, 695
- Pathfinder panel, 11, 337–340
- paths (drawn). *See also* clipping
  - paths; file paths; lines
  - and line segments
  - arrowheads and tailfeathers, 346–347
  - clipping paths. *See* clipping paths
  - compared to frames, 321
  - compound paths, 333–335
  - contents of, 338, 569–570
  - control handles. *See* control handles
  - control handles
  - Convert Shape operations, 337–340
  - converting text or strokes to
    - outlines, 420–422, 679
  - converting to motion paths, 730
  - copying from Illustrator
    - files, 456
  - copying on Clipboard, 61
  - corner effects, 341–342
  - corner or curve points, 325
  - direction of, 324–325
  - drawing, 17, 21–22, 326–334
  - drop shadows, 369
  - editing tools, 17, 18
  - erasing, 336–337
  - feathering, 372–375
  - filling, 353–355
  - formatting attributes and, 324
  - freeform, 21–22
  - glow effect, 695
  - gradients. *See* gradients
    - and gradient fills
  - holes in closed paths, 333–335
  - joining, 332
  - moving points, 330
  - open and closed paths, 331–332, 340
  - order or winding, 321
  - path operations, 337–340
  - PathEffects example script, 695
  - placing text on paths.
    - See* path text
  - points. *See* points
  - points on, 322
  - reversing direction, 324–325, 340, 348
  - selecting points, 330
  - smoothing, 335–336
  - strokes. *See* strokes
  - text on. *See* path text
  - text wrap around, 416
  - transforming, 569–570
  - winding, 324–325
- paths (files)
  - copying full paths, 479, 524
  - font files, 688
- paths (motion), 728, 729
  - in animation, 728, 729
  - drawing, 731
  - editing, 730
- patience of PeachPit Press, xii, 287
- patterns
  - patterning, avoiding
    - in print, 656
  - stroke styles and patterns, 350–353
- pausing animation, 718
- PB page number, 556
- PDF export presets, 513–515
- PDF graphics and files
  - Acrobat layers, 736
  - Acrobat Reader
    - compatibility, 501
  - active TOCs and indexes, 504
  - advantages of, 461
  - animation in, 732
  - audio and video in, 723–727
  - audio and video limitations, 727
  - bookmarks in, 504, 714–715
  - button tooltips in, 721
  - buttons in, 715–721
  - choosing graphic file
    - formats, 461
  - color management and, 471, 624, 636, 638–640
  - color models, 500
  - compared to EPS graphics, 461
  - compression options, 505–507
  - copying on Clipboard, 61
  - cropping images, 507
  - display performance settings, 56
  - embedded fonts, 510–511
  - encoding methods, 506–507
  - exporting
    - books as, 545
    - interactive files, 736–737
    - overview, 499–500
    - PDF export presets, 500, 513–515
    - saving export options, 513–515
    - XML structure tags to PDF, 533–534
  - guides and grids in, 504
  - hyperlinks in, 504, 707–714
  - ICC profiles, 509
  - importing
    - layers in, 471, 488–489
    - multiple pages, 469–470
    - placing as graphics, 469–471
    - playing audio or video and, 723–727

- imposition plug-ins, 667
- interactive elements in,
  - 504, 706, 723–727
- layers in, 471, 488–489, 503
- metadata in, 488
- multi-state objects in, 721–723
- non-printing objects in, 504
- OPI settings, 663
- optimizing for online
  - viewing, 502
- page transition effects,
  - 725, 726, 733–734
- PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, and
  - PDF/X-4 files, 500, 509, 638
- placing graphics, 469–471
- placing with captions, 454
- Presentation Mode, 735
- previewing, 734–735
- printing imposed
  - booklets to, 671
- resampling images, 505–507
- security and Digital Rights
  - Management, 511–513
- simulating overprinting, 509
- slide shows in, 721–723
- tables of contents
  - bookmarks, 504
- tagged PDF files, 504–505
- thumbnails, 502
- transparency and, 361, 675, 738
- types of, 499–500
- PDF place icon, 68
- PDF Print Engine, 361,
  - 644, 661, 674
- PDF/X options, 509
- PDX/X3 standard, 638
- PeachPit Press, kind generosity
  - and patience of, xii, 287
- Pen tool, 17, 18, 21, 327–328
- Pencil tool, 17, 18, 21–22, 326–327
- pentagons, drawing, 22
- percentages
  - in colors, 617
  - magnifying screen by, 65
  - in panel displays, 574, 581
  - scaling objects and, 582
- Perceptual rendering
  - intent, 468, 631
- perfect-bound imposition,
  - 668, 669
- performance and speed
  - downloadable fonts
    - and, 660–661
  - flattener preview and, 680
  - font preview size and, 41
  - graphic display settings, 465
  - plug-ins and, 68
  - printing speed, 658
  - screen display preferences, 55
  - Tool Tips and, 37
  - transparent objects and, 361
- periods, 225
- Perl scripts, 693
- permissions for PDF, 513
- Permissions Password settings, 513
- pesky text, 309
- pestilence, 422
- Phillips, Matt, 375, 462, 463
- philosophy of scripting,
  - InDesign, 696
- Phinney, Thomas, 259
- phone book style headers, 173, 175
- Photoshop graphics
  - applying colors to, 618–619
  - characteristics of, 461–463
  - clipping paths, 466–467, 469
  - flattened files, 462–463
  - graphic file formats, 460
  - importing bitmapped
    - images, 466–468
  - layer comps, 490
  - layer visibility, 468
  - layers in files, 462–463
  - metadata from, 164, 176
  - Multichannel mode, 462
  - transparency and, 361, 675
- phrases, finding. *See* finding
  - and replacing
- pi, 314
- picas
  - pica measurement overrides, 16
  - size of points, redefining, 46
- PICT graphics, 461
- Pillow Emboss effect, 371, 372
- pink highlights, dreaded,
  - 43, 228, 239, 290
- pixels
  - override abbreviation, 16
  - pixels per inch (ppi), 463–464
- Place command or dialog
  - box, 150, 152–154,
    - 181–182, 456, 457–459
- Place End of Story Footnotes at
  - Bottom of Text option, 208
- place icons (place guns),
  - 37–38, 67, 68, 458–459
- Place PDF dialog box, 469–471
- placeholders
  - dummy text, 159–161
  - text variables, 170
- Placeholder.txt file, 161
- PlaceMultipagePDF example
  - script, 470, 695
- placing graphics
  - AI graphics, 469–471
  - bitmap graphics, 466–468
  - coloring imported graphics, 494
  - contact sheets, 460
  - with destination frame
    - selected, 457
  - embedding files, 472
  - EPS graphics, 461, 468–469
  - graphic display settings,
    - 464–466, 497–498
  - layer visibility, 468
  - linking to files, 472
  - multiple files, 459–460
  - with no frame selected, 458
  - overview, 456
  - PDF graphics, 461, 469–471
  - Place command, 457–459
  - place icons (place guns),
    - 37–38, 67, 68, 458–459
  - resizing imported
    - graphics, 482–483
- placing text. *See also*
  - importing text
  - basics of, 181–182
  - multiple files, 459–460
  - on paths. *See* path text
  - place icons (place guns),
    - 37–38, 67, 68, 458–459
  - PlaceMultipagePDF
    - example script, 695
- Plain point conversion, 340
- plates, previewing, 671–673
- Platform setting, 186



- platforms
  - designating for imported text, 186
  - operating system failures, 77
  - scripting and, 691
  - specifying in tagged text files, 233
- Play on Page Load option, 726
- Play Together button, 731
- playing animation
  - buttons, 718
  - timing, 731
- playing audio or video files, 723–727
- plug-ins
  - Adobe InCopy, 199–200
  - InDesign scripting philosophy, 696
  - managing, 67–68
  - Package, 686–688
  - Preflight, 683–686
- plus signs (+), 146, 301–302, 311
- PMD files, 667
- Point/Pica Size settings, 46
- point size of type
  - adjusting when scaling, 36–37
  - character formatting, 239–240
  - fonts with optical size axis, 40
  - greeked and, 57, 58
  - increasing and decreasing, 46
  - leading and, 243
  - measurement override
    - abbreviation, 16
  - measurement override
    - abbreviations, 16
  - size of points, redefining, 46
  - superscript and subscript characters, 255–256
  - tracking and, 247
- points. *See also* lines and line segments
  - adding or deleting, 22, 330, 694
  - Bezier paths, 323–324, 325, 328–332
  - changing position of, 328
  - control handles. *See* control handles
  - convert operations, 340
  - converting, 326, 328
  - corner and curve points, 325
  - moving, 330
  - paths. *See* paths (drawn)
    - in paths, 321
    - selecting, 20, 330
    - transforming, 569, 570
- Polygon Frame tool, 17, 18
- Polygon Settings dialog box, 22, 23
- polygons and Polygon tool
  - converting objects to polygons, 340
  - drawing basic shapes, 17, 322
  - overview, 22–23
  - shortcuts, 18
- pop-up menus, 29
- Portable Document Format. *See* PDF graphics and files
- Position option, 207
- Position tool. *See* Content Grabber; Page tool
- positional forms (fonts), 259
- positioning. *See also* moving
  - above line objects, 429, 430
  - anchored objects, 431–434
  - baseline positioning, 139–141
  - Content Grabber, 483
  - footnotes, 207
  - inline frames, 425
  - Page tool, 18, 20
  - ruler guides around objects, 114
- Posix metacharacters, 225
- posters (preview images)
  - audio files, 726–727
  - changing images, 727
  - in FLA files, 706
  - movie files, 725
- PostScript fonts, 239, 688
- PostScript interpreters. *See* RIPs
- PostScript language and files
  - device-independent files, 643
  - InDesign support for, 497
  - levels, 497, 661–662
  - PostScript dumps, 643
  - PPDs, 642–643
  - printing to disk, 643
  - transparency, support
    - for, 673–674
- PostScript Level setting, 661–662
- PostScript Printer
  - Descriptions, 642–643
- PostScript Printer Determines
  - Color option, 637
- PostScript setting (EPS files), 497
- Power Zoom shortcut, 64, 65
- PPDs, 642–643
- ppi (pixels per inch), 463–464
- Prefer PDF When Pasting
  - option, 61
- Preferences dialog box
  - appearance of black
    - preferences, 58–59
  - Autocorrect preferences, 51–52
  - Clipboard preferences, 61
  - composition preferences, 42–45, 290
  - defaults, 62
  - dictionary preferences, 49–51
  - display performance
    - preferences, 55–58
  - file handling preferences, 59–61
  - general preferences, 36–37
  - grids preferences, 47–48
  - guides preferences, 48–49
  - interface preferences, 37–39
  - link handling, 480
  - notes preferences, 52
  - overview, 35–36
  - Smart preferences, 118–119
  - Story Editor preferences, 54–55
  - track changes preferences, 53–54
  - troubleshooting loss of
    - settings, 35–36
  - type preferences, 39–42
  - units and increments
    - preferences, 45–47
- prefixes, page numbers, 91–92
- Preflight Options dialog box, 686
- Preflight panel, 11, 683–686
- Preflight pop-up menu, 5
- Preflight profiles, 684–685
- Preflight Profiles dialog
  - box, 684–685
- prepress files, 643
- Prepress option (color management preset), 627–628
- presentations and slide shows, 721–723
- Preserve CMYK Numbers
  - option, 635, 637–638
- Preserve Embedded Profiles
  - setting, 629–630
- Preserve Facing-Page
  - Spreads option, 41

- Preserve Formatting option (object styles), 442
- Preserve Image Dimensions When Relinking option, 61
- Preserve Local Formatting option, 409
- Preserve Local Overrides option, 183
- Preserve Numbers (Ignore Embedded Profile) option, 630
- Preserve Numbers (Ignore Linked Profiles) option, 638
- Preserve Numbers option (PDF export), 508
- Preserve Numbers policy, 633
- Preserve Object-Level View Settings option, 55
- Preserve Page Breaks option, 184
- Preserve PDF Data At Quit option, 61
- Preserve Styles and Formatting from Text and Tables option, 184
- presets
  - color management
    - presets, 626–628
  - document presets, 72–73
  - flattener presets, 677–680
  - motion presets, 728, 732
  - page size presets, 72–73
  - PDF export presets, 500, 513–515
  - print presets, 664–666
  - saving, 72
  - styles compared to presets, 72–73
  - text variable presets, 163
- preventing
  - line breaks in text, 256
  - orphans and widows, 290–292
  - reflow, 687
  - transformation, 597
- preview images. *See also* posters (preview images); proxies and proxy images
  - exporting with EPS graphics, 497–498
  - exporting with PDF files, 502
  - importing with EPS graphics, 469
  - linked graphics, 472
  - place cursors, 37–38
  - saving, 60
- Preview Mode indicator, 18
- Preview panel, 11, 734–735
- Preview setting (EPS files), 497–498
- previewing. *See also* preview images
  - anchored object
    - positioning, 432
  - booklet imposition, 670
  - browser previews, 734
  - color separations, 671–673
  - effects, 368
  - flattener settings, 680–681
  - font preview size, 41
  - interactive documents, 734–735, 736
  - merged data, 526
  - mixed ink groups, 612
  - overprinting and trapping effects, 673
  - problem tags in text
    - import, 188–189
  - stroke styles, 350
  - text variables, 167
  - video controller skins, 725
- Previously Page button, 3
- previously immutable laws of physics, 454
- Print Blank Pages option, 647
- Print Booklet dialog box, 667–671
- Print Booklet to PDF command, 671
- Print dialog box
  - Advanced pane, 662–664
  - Color Management pane, 636–638, 662
  - General pane, 644–647
  - Graphics pane, 658–662
  - Ink Manager. *See* Ink Manager
  - Marks and Bleeds pane, 651–653
  - for non-PostScript devices, 644
  - Output pane, 653–658
  - overview, 642–644
  - print presets, 664–666
  - Print Preview features, 644
  - printer driver settings, 643–644
  - saving settings as text file, 664
  - Setup pane, 648–651
  - Summary pane, 664
- Print Layers option, 647
- Print Master Pages option, 647
- Print Non-Printing Objects option, 647
- print presets, 664–666
- Print Presets dialog box, 664–665
- Print Preview features, 644
- Print Visible Guides and Baseline Grids option, 647
- printer fonts, 420
- Printer Profile pop-up menu, 637
- printer spreads, 502, 647, 667–671
- printer styles (print presets), 664–666
- printers. *See also* printing
  - color management, 623–624
  - in-RIP trapping, 655
  - inkjet printers, 625, 626
  - PostScript level, specifying, 661–662
  - print presets, 664–666
  - printer driver settings, 643–644
  - printer fonts, 420
  - profiles, 636–637
  - roll-fed printers, 648
  - saving settings as text file, 664
- printer's marks
  - overview, 666–667
  - PMD files, 667
  - printing, 651–653
- printing. *See also* printers
  - animated objects, 729
  - bitmap image settings, 658–660
  - black inks, 58–59
  - blank pages, 647
  - blank space between printed pages, 648
  - bleed marks, 651, 653
  - booklets, 667–671
  - books, 536, 544–545
  - collating pages, 645
  - color
    - as black, 654–655
    - black inks, 58–59
    - color bars, 652
    - color management
      - profiles, 636–638
    - color separations, 653–657
    - composite color, 653–654
    - inks, turning on or off, 657
    - printing process and, 600
    - process colors, 600
    - spot colors, 600
  - covers, 646
  - crop marks, 651

- custom time and date stamps, 170
- downloadable fonts, 660–661
- even or odd pages, 646–647
- file and page information, 652
- flattener. *See* flattener
- guides and grids, 647
- halftone screening settings, 655–657
- history of, 641
- imposition, 667–671
- in-RIP separations, 654
- in-RIP trapping, 655
- including instructions, 687
- keyboard shortcut list, 32
- layers, 647
- master pages, 647
- mirroring pages, 655
- multiple page sizes, 646
- negatives, 655
- non-printing objects, 647
- overprinting, simulating, 658
- page position for, 649
- page ranges, 645–646
- pages in reverse order, 645
- paper offset, 648
- paper orientation, 648
- paper size, 648
- PDF files with transparency, 361
- PostScript levels and, 661–662
- preflight file testing of files, 683–686
- presets, 664–666
- previewing, 644
- printer's marks, 651–653, 666–667
- proxy images, 660
- registration marks, 652
- remote printing, packaging files for, 686–688
- remote printing, preparing for, 682–683
- resident fonts, 660
- saving settings as text file, 664
- scaling printer output, 649
- spreads on single sheet, 647
- thumbnails, 650
- tiled output, 650–651
- transparent objects, 360–361
- trapping. *See* trapping
- Printing Instructions dialog box, 686
- process colors. *See also* spot colors
  - choosing color model, 601
  - converting between spot and process, 613, 621
  - halftone screen settings, 656
  - in InDesign publications, 601
  - Ink Manager, 621
  - inks, turning on or off, 657
  - in mixed ink groups, 613
  - in mixed ink swatches, 611
  - printed color samples, 626
  - printing, 600
- productivity increases, joy of, 212
- Profile Inclusion Policy
  - pop-up menu, 509, 639
- Profile Mismatches settings, 630
- Profile setting, 468
- profiles. *See* color profiles; device profiles; Preflight profiles
- Progressive JPEG images, 495
- Projecting cap option, 345
- Proof Colors command, 634–636
- Proof Setup submenu, 634–636
- Proof source spaces, 636
- proofs and proofing. *See also* color management
  - optimized subsampling and, 658–660
  - soft-proofing, 634–636
  - using color printers, 626
- Proportional Lining numeral formatting, 260
- Proportional Oldstyle numeral formatting, 260
- proportional resizing or scaling, 23, 571
- proxies and proxy images. *See also* preview images
  - center of rotation, 23
  - displaying imported graphics, 465
  - importing EPS graphics, 469
  - layers and, 126–127
  - mapping images to frames, 486
  - on-screen low-resolution images, 56
  - printing preview images, 660
  - Reference Point proxies, anchored objects, 432
  - selected objects and, 104, 105
  - Selection Proxy, 126–127
  - Transform and Control panels, 568–569, 572, 573
- Proxy setting, 660
- PS files (PostScript files), 643
- PSD files. *See* Photoshop graphics
- psychocybernetic illusions, 109
- publications
  - adding pages, 82–83
  - book features, 536, 539
  - bypassing New Document dialog box, 73
  - chapter numbering, 543–544, 546
  - CMYK settings, 635
  - converting other files to, 74–75
  - copying
    - layers from other publications, 130
    - master pages from other publications, 96–97
    - stroke styles from other publications, 352, 353
    - styles from other publications, 317–318
    - text into publications, 136
  - creating, 70–73
  - creating versions with conditional text, 209
  - defaults, 62, 70–73
  - displaying information about, 27–28
  - docked display, 38
  - Document Fonts folder, 687–688
  - document grid, 47–48, 110, 119–120
  - document spaces (color management), 632–633, 636
  - exporting. *See* exporting
  - file extensions, 75–76, 164
  - flattener presets, 679–680
  - fonts, 687–688
  - imagesetting, preparing for, 682–683
  - indexing, 552–566
  - ink list, 601
  - layers. *See* layers
  - layout. *See* page layout
  - limiting searches to, 214
  - metadata in, 486–488
  - multiple page sizes in, 86–89
  - multiple windows, 7–9
  - opening, 73–75
  - opening in tabs, 38

packaging for remote  
   printing, 686–688  
 passwords for, 512–513  
 preferences, 35–36  
 preflight testing, 683–686  
 presets, 72–73  
 printing. *See* printing  
 rearranging pages, 83–86  
 recovery data and, 59–60, 77  
 saving, 75–76  
 setting up, 77–78, 83–85  
 templates, 73, 76  
 XML features. *See* XML  
 pulling of hair, QuarkXPress  
   users, and character  
   styles, 305  
 punctuation  
   finding and replacing with  
     GREP methods, 225  
   hanging punctuation, 318–320  
   in index entries, 565  
   removing in text variables, 164  
   shortcuts, 156  
 Punk effect, 695  
 purifying waters of Lake  
   Minnetonka, 75  
 purple highlights, substituted  
   glyphs, 43  
 Python scripts, 693

## Q

quad left and quad right, 264  
 Quality option, 495  
 QuarkXPress  
   character styles, 304  
   converting files to InDesign  
     publications, 74–75  
   keyboard shortcut set, 31  
   master page differences, 94–95  
   Xtensions, 74  
 question marks (?), 473  
 Quick Apply feature, 317, 448–451  
 QuickTime, 517  
 Quite Imposing, 667  
 quotation marks (“  
   double quotes option, 50  
   entering, 156  
   typesetters’, 39, 183, 186, 188

## R

radial gradients, 355  
 rags, 286, 289–290  
 Rainbow path text option, 445  
 Range field (PDF export), 502  
 range kerning. *See* tracking  
   (spacing)  
 Ranges field, 645–646  
 raster images. *See* bitmap graphics  
 Raster Images slider, 56  
 Raster/Vector Balance  
   slider, 677–678  
 Rasterize Pages option, 738  
 Rasterize the PostScript  
   option, 469  
 rasterizing  
   graphics for SWF files, 738  
   preview images, 469  
   previewing flattener  
     settings, 680–681  
   vectors, 674, 677–678, 679  
 Read Embedded OPI Image  
   Links option, 468–469, 663  
 reader’s spreads, 502, 647, 667  
*Real World Color*  
   *Management*, 624  
*Real World Photoshop*, 464, 624  
*Real World Scanning* and  
   *Halftones*, 464  
 really bad justification  
   decisions, 44  
 reapplying master pages, 101  
 rearranging pages, 83–86  
 Reassign To On Page Click  
   command, 732  
 Reassign To On Page Load  
   command, 732  
 recently-used glyphs, 159  
 Recompose All Stories When  
   Modified setting, 51  
 recomposition  
   hyphenation, 50, 51, 687  
   preventing reflow, 687  
   text variables and, 165, 166, 170  
 records in data merge, 528  
 recovering unsaved changed  
   files, 59–60, 77  
 Rectangle Frame tool, 17, 18

rectangles and Rectangle tool  
   converting objects to  
     rectangles, 340  
   drawing basic shapes,  
     17, 322–323  
   overview, 22  
   rounding corners, 341–342  
   shortcuts, 18  
 recto pages, 71, 543  
 red circle with question  
   mark icon, 473  
 red dots in tables, 386  
 red stop-sign icon, 540  
 Redefine Scaling as 100%  
   option, 574  
 Redefine Style command, 311, 414  
 redrawing screen display,  
   39, 55, 381  
 Reference Point proxies,  
   anchored objects, 432  
 reflecting objects, 586  
 reflection angles, 586  
 reflow  
   hyphenation, 50, 51, 687  
   preventing, 687  
   Smart Text Reflow option, 41  
   text variables and, 165,  
     166, 170, 172  
 refreshing flattener previews, 680  
 RegxBuddy tool, 228  
 registration marks, 652  
 Registration Marks option, 652  
 regular expressions. *See* GREP  
 Relative Colorimetric setting, 631  
 relative leading  
   (QuarkXPress), 240  
 relative positioning, 576  
 Relative to Spine option, 432  
 Release command, 430  
 Release Compound Path  
   command, 421  
 Release State To Object  
   command, 723  
 Relink dialog box, 475  
 Relink folders, 480–481  
 Relink to Folder command, 476

- relinking
  - default relink folder, 480–481
  - to different file types, 476–477
  - to missing files, 480
  - to multiple instances, 476
  - to new files, 475–476
  - preserving original size/
    - scale options and, 61
- remote printing. *See* commercial printers; imagesetters and service providers
- Remove All Local Overrides command, 101
- Remove Notes from Story command, 199
- Remove Selected Local Overrides command, 100–101
- Remove Styles and Formatting from Text and Tables option, 183
- Remove Text Formatting option, 188
- Remove Text Style Conflicts Using option, 188
- Removed Words list, 202
- removing. *See also* deleting
  - bullets or numbers, 300
  - character styles, 309, 310
  - character styles from text, 305
  - documents from books, 538
  - effects, 376
  - formatting, 183, 188, 309, 310
  - frame-fitting options, 485
  - kerning, 244
  - local overrides. *See* clearing overrides
  - object styles, 441–442
  - optical margin adjustments, 319–320
  - paragraph styles from text, 310
  - strokes from paths, 349
  - styles, 183
  - table formatting, 183
  - text change tracking, 53
  - text formatting, 183, 188
  - text style conflicts, 188–189
  - tracking, 244
  - transparency, 376
  - unplaced graphics from
    - cursor, 459
  - renaming
    - bookmarks, 715
    - master pages, 95, 96
  - rendering images, 55–58, 468
  - rendering intents, 468, 631
  - renumbering pages in books, 536, 539, 542–543
  - reordering
    - pages, 83–86
    - stacked objects, 120–122
    - swatches, 614
  - repaginating books, 536, 539, 542–543
  - repeated words, spellchecking, 51
  - repeating elements
    - nested styles, 281
    - page elements, 93–95
  - repeating transformations, 589–592
  - repeating values for mixed
    - ink groups, 612
  - Replace Document dialog box, 538, 540
  - Replace Existing Index option, 563
  - Replace Existing Table of Contents option, 550
  - Replace Selected Items option, 181
  - replacing. *See also* finding
    - and replacing
      - documents, 538, 540
      - existing indexes, 563
      - existing tables of content, 550
      - FindChangeByList script, 695
      - fonts, 261–262
      - FPO images, 477
      - glyphs, 228–230
      - keyboard shortcuts, 30
      - master pages, 95
      - placed items, 459
      - saving find and replace queries, 230
      - selected items, 181
      - text, 216–217, 223–228
      - text variables, 168
  - reports, Preflight, 686
  - resampling images, 505–507
  - Reset All Warning Dialogs button, 37
  - Reset Menus command, 33
  - Reset to Base button, 315
  - resetting. *See* restoring
  - resident fonts, printing, 660
  - resizing
    - animated objects, 732
    - characters, 36–37, 248
    - clipping paths, 493
    - columns in tables, 394–395
    - frame fitting features, 483–486
    - Free Transform tool
      - and, 24, 580
    - Gap tool and, 596
    - glyphs, 288–289
    - graphics after layout
      - adjustments, 103
    - icons, 79
    - imported graphics, 482–483
    - keyboard shortcuts for, 582
    - layout adjustment
      - settings, 101–104
    - movie frames, 723, 727
    - multiple objects, 571
    - pages, 79, 80–82
    - panel percentage displays
      - and, 574, 581
    - panels, 12
    - pasteboard, 49
    - preserving size during
      - relinking, 61, 480
    - Preview panel, 734
    - printer output, 649
    - proportional scaling, 23
    - resampling images, 505–507
    - rows in tables, 394–395
    - Scale dialog box and, 581–582
    - Scale tool and, 23, 578–580
    - Selection tool and, 580
    - strokes, 582
    - tables, 392–394
    - text frames, 36–37, 154–155, 571, 572
    - text in frames, 239–240
    - Transform and Control panels and, 580–581

## resolution

clipping paths and, 493  
 display settings, 56  
 displaying in Info panel, 28  
 exporting EPS graphics  
   and, 498–499  
 flattener settings, 663–  
   664, 677–679  
 gradients, 678–679  
 graphics, 463–464  
 High Resolution flattener  
   style, 677, 678  
 interactive document  
   settings, 737  
 JPEG files, 496  
 monochrome images, 506  
 optimized subsampling  
   and, 658–659  
 optimizing printed  
   images, 659–660  
 resampling images, 505–507  
 transparency flattener  
   and, 677–679  
 Resolution pop-up menu, 737  
 resolving conflicting text  
   variables, 168  
 Restart Numbering Every  
   option, 206  
 restoring  
   default menus, 33  
   losing unsaved changes, 77  
   multi-state objects, 723  
   original defaults, 62  
   resetting hyperlinks, 713  
   resetting zero point, 6–7  
   reverting to saved versions, 539  
   warning dialog boxes, 37  
 resulting colors in  
   transparency, 362  
 resuming animation, 718  
 retaining formatting  
   when pasting, 61  
 retracting control handles, 329  
 return characters. *See*  
   carriage returns  
 Reveal features, 478–479  
 Reveal in Bridge option, 479  
 Reveal in Explorer  
   command, 261, 479  
 Reveal in Finder command,  
   261, 479

Reverse on Roll Off event, 728  
 Reverse Order option, 645  
 Reverse Path button or  
   command, 324, 348  
 Reverse Path command, 730  
 reversing  
   arrowheads, 348  
   path direction, 324–325,  
     340, 348, 730  
   printed page order, 645  
 reversing animation, 718  
 Revert to Saved function, 539  
 reverting  
   to original defaults, 62  
   to saved versions in books, 539  
 reviewers' chastisement, hungry  
   children and, 554  
 RGB color model. *See also* color  
   management; color models  
   choosing color models, 601–602  
   color management and,  
     625, 627, 628  
   color management  
     policies, 629–630  
   composites and separations,  
     653–654  
   converting, 497, 508  
   EPS files and, 497, 640  
   imported images and, 625  
   JPEG files and, 496  
   PDF files and, 508, 639  
   presets, 627  
   RGB working space,  
     628–629, 632  
   switching to, 617  
 rich blacks, 58–59  
 rich media. *See* interactive features  
 rich text format. *See* RTF files  
 right alignment  
   paragraph alignment, 264  
   tabs and tab character  
     alignment, 268–269, 272  
 right-click menus (context  
   menus), 29  
 right double quotes (“), 39, 50, 183  
 right-hand pages, 543  
 Right Indent field, 265  
 right justified paragraphs, 264  
 right single quotes (’), 39, 50

## RIPs

in-RIP separations, 654  
 in-RIP trapping, 655  
 transparency and, 674, 676  
 R’lyeh (elder evil space god), 294  
*The Rocket*, 235  
 roll-fed printers, 648  
 rollovers  
   animation triggers, 728  
   buttons, 719–720  
 roman numerals, 90, 92, 296  
 Rotate 90 degrees buttons, 575  
 Rotate dialog box, 585  
 Rotate Spreads feature, 89–90  
 Rotate tool, 17, 18, 23, 583  
 rotating  
   animated objects, 732  
   audio or video frames, 727  
   center of rotation, 23  
   Free Transform tool and, 584  
   multiple objects, 571–572, 585  
   retaining after relinking, 480  
   Rotate dialog box and, 585  
   Rotate tool and, 18, 23, 583  
   rotation angles, 583  
   Selection tool and, 583  
   spreads, 89–90  
   table cells, 399, 400  
   Transform and Control  
     panels and, 584, 585  
 rotation angles, 583  
 Roth, Steve, 464  
 Round Cap option, 345  
 Round Join option, 345  
 rounded corners, 22, 341–342, 345  
 Rounded feather corner  
   option, 372  
 rows (grids), 592–593  
 rows (tables)  
   adding, 395–397  
   alternating fills or  
     strokes, 409–410  
   colors, 410  
   defined, 383  
   deleting, 397–398  
   distributing height  
     evenly, 394–395  
   fills or strokes, 409–410  
   header and footer rows, 390–392  
   resizing, 394–395  
   selecting rows, 389  
   table styles and, 414

- RTF files
  - exporting, 190, 317
  - exporting documents with
    - style groups and, 317
  - importing, 181, 182–185
  - retaining formatting
    - when pasting, 61
  - styles in, 318
- RTF Import Options dialog
  - box, 182–185
- rtpm://-style URLs, 724
- Rule Above option, 209
- ruler guides
  - copying, 117
  - creating new guides, 112–113
  - defined, 108
  - deleting, 117
  - editing, 114
  - exporting in PDF files, 504
  - illustrated, 3
  - layout adjustment settings, 103
  - locking and unlocking, 116–117
  - moving between layers, 114–115
  - positioning around objects, 114
  - selecting, 114
- Ruler Guides dialog box,
  - 48, 115–116
- rulers, 3, 6, 45. *See also*
  - ruler guides
- rules
  - footnotes and, 209
  - paragraph. *See* paragraph rules
  - strokes. *See* strokes
- run-in formatting
  - indexes, 564
  - table of contents, 549
- run-in headings
  - character styles, 302
  - nested styles, 276–283
- Run-in option, 549
- Run Length encoding, 507
- Running Header (Character Style) text variable,
  - 162, 164, 172–173
- Running Header (Paragraph Style) text variable,
  - 162, 164, 172–173
- running headers or footers.
  - See* headers or footers
- runs, defined, 290
- S**
  - saddle-stitched imposition,
    - 668, 669
  - Same as XML Structure
    - option, 518
  - samples, color swatch
    - books, 625–626
  - sampling colors, 24, 25
  - sans serif type, 243
  - Satin effect, 372
  - Saturation rendering intent, 631
  - Saturation transparency
    - blending mode, 364
  - Save As command, 75
  - Save command, 75
  - Save File As dialog box, 75
  - Save Query button, 230
  - Save Swatches for Exchange
    - command, 607
  - saved data, 77
  - saving
    - color swatches, 607
    - converted books, 538
    - converted InDesign files, 74
    - document presets, 72
    - document recovery
      - features, 59–60
    - find and replace queries, 230
    - glyph sets, 159
    - motion presets, 728, 732
    - panel arrangements as
      - workspaces, 34–35
    - Preflight reports, 686
    - preview images, 60
    - publications, 75–76
    - “saving back” to earlier
      - InDesign versions, 76
    - stroke styles, 353
    - unsaved document indicator, 4
    - workspaces, 35
  - Scale dialog box, 581–582
  - Scale setting (printing), 649
  - Scale to Fit option, 649
  - Scale tool, 17, 18, 23, 483, 578–580
  - scaling. *See* resizing
  - scanned images, 463–464
  - scanners, color management
    - and, 623–624
  - Scissors tool, 17, 18, 26, 331
  - Scitext RIPs, 676
  - scope of index entries, 554–556
  - Scope options (text variables), 164
  - screen display. *See also* graphic
    - display settings
    - color management, 623–624
    - distrust of, 576
    - drawing and redrawing
      - screen display, 55, 381
    - matching black ink color
      - on screen, 58–59
    - monitor profiles, 627
    - preferences, 55–58
    - redrawing, 39
    - “soft proofing,” 625
  - screen frequency
    - angle settings, 655–657
    - compression and, 505
    - graphics and, 464
  - Screen Mode pop-up menu, 4
  - Screen transparency
    - blending mode, 363
  - scribes, lamentations of, 641
  - Script Debugger, 692
  - script editors, 691–693
  - Script Label panel, 698–699
  - scripting examples
    - AddGuides, 114, 694
    - AddPoints, 694
    - AdjustLayout, 694
    - AlignToPage, 694
    - AnimationEncyclopedia, 694
    - BreakFrames, 694
    - CornerEffects, 694
    - CreateCharacterStyle, 304, 694
    - CropMarks, 695
    - CutContents, 700–702
    - Draw Ninas, 702–703
    - ExportAllStories, 695
    - FindChangeByList, 695
    - ImageCatalog script, 695
    - MakeGrid, 695
    - Mystic Rose, 704
    - Neon, 695
    - PathEffects, 695
    - PlaceMultipagePDF, 695
    - removing style overrides, 700
    - SelectObjects, 695–696
    - SortParagraphs, 696
    - SplitStory, 696
    - TabUtilities, 696
    - Web site downloads, 700
    - working through, 699–700
  - Scripting Guide and Tutorial*, 693, 699

scripts and scripting. *See also*  
 scripting examples  
 aliases or shortcuts to  
   scripts, 697  
 benefits of, 696–697  
 deleting scripts, 697  
 fear of, 690  
 InDesign scripting forum, 693  
 InDesign scripting  
   philosophy, 696  
 JavaScript and HTML  
   exports, 521  
 JavaScript scripting, 700  
 keyboard shortcuts, 698  
 Macintosh scripting  
   systems, 691–692  
 order in Scripts panel, 698  
 overview, 690  
 in Quick Apply list, 450, 451  
 removing style overrides, 700  
 running scripts, 690  
 script editors, 691–693  
 Script Label panel, 698–699  
 Scripts panel, 697–698  
 Scripts Panel folder, 690  
 testing scripts, 702  
 user interfaces, 703–704  
 Visual Basic scripting, 692–693  
 Web site downloads, xi, 700  
 Windows scripting  
   systems, 692–693  
   working through, 699–700  
 Scripts panel, 11, 690, 697–698  
 Scripts Panel folder, 690  
 scroll wheels, 67  
 scrolling and scroll bars  
   basic techniques, 5, 65–67  
   by dragging objects, 66  
   as enemy of productivity, 5  
   gestures, 38  
   with Hand tool, 26, 65–66  
   illustrated, 3  
   through publications, 62  
 Search field, 4  
 Search for Missing Links  
   command, 479  
 Search pop-up menu, 215  
 searching. *See* finding  
 Seattle Mariners, 534  
 second-level index entries, 560  
 seconds, in text variables, 165

Section 508-compliant  
   documents, 503  
 section headings in indexes, 564  
 section markers, 91, 92, 93, 94  
 Section Prefix field, 91–92  
 sections  
   absolute numbers, 646  
   creating, 90–92  
   page numbering, 36, 543, 646  
   page ranges, index entries, 556  
   section markers, 91, 92, 93, 94  
   section prefixes, 91–92  
   specifying ranges to  
     print, 646–647  
   text in markers, 93  
 security, 511–513  
 Security pane (Export PDF  
   dialog box), 511–513  
*See* and *See also* cross-  
   references, 557–559  
 Select All command, 104  
 Select Container button, 109  
 Select Content button, 109  
 selecting. *See also* selecting  
   objects; selecting text  
   all items, 104  
   objects. *See* selecting objects  
   pages or spreads, 81–82  
   ruler guides, 115  
   Selection Proxy, 126–127  
   text. *See* selecting text  
 selecting objects  
   all objects, 104  
   anchored objects, 429  
   behind other objects, 106  
   clipping paths, 491–492  
   before deleting, 132  
   deselecting, 106  
   with Direct Selection tool,  
     17, 20, 107–108, 131  
   frames and frame  
     contents, 481–482  
   grouping selected objects, 131  
   guides, 114  
   inline frames, 425, 429  
   inside groups, 107–108, 131  
   keyboard shortcuts, 106–107  
   on layers, 126–127  
   within other objects, 109  
   overlapping objects, 106  
   overview, 104–108

points, 330  
 selection handles, 104, 127  
 Selection Proxy, 126–127  
 selection rectangles, 104  
 with Selection tool, 19–20  
 SelectObjects script, 695–696  
 subselecting, 20  
 subselecting objects, 131  
 table elements, 387–388  
 zooming in on selected  
   objects, 62–64  
 selecting text  
   cursor movement  
     shortcuts, 190–192  
   before formatting,  
     236–237, 241, 263  
   with mouse, 191  
   replacing with importing  
     text, 181  
   table elements, 387–388  
   triple-clicking Type tool, 40  
 selection colors of layer  
   objects, 124, 127–128  
 selection handles, 104, 127  
 Selection Proxy, 126–127  
 Selection tool  
   overview, 17, 19–20, 104  
   resizing objects, 580  
   rotating objects, 583  
   scaling graphics, 483  
   selecting frames and  
     graphics, 481–482  
   selecting text for  
     formatting, 236  
   shortcuts, 18  
   subselecting, 109  
 SelectObjects example  
   script, 695–696  
 self-experimentation approach  
   to page layout, 436  
 semi-automatic text flow,  
   68, 152, 153  
 Send Backward command, 122  
 Send Data pop-up menu, 658–660  
 Send Data setting (EPS  
   options), 498–499  
 Send to Back command, 121–122  
 Senefelder, Alois, 641  
 SEP files (device-independent  
   PostScript files), 643  
 separating panels, 13  
 separations. *See* color separations



- Separations option, 654
- Separations panel, 671–673
- separator bar in Pages panel, 79
- Separator option, 207
- separators for index entries, 565
- sequential page numbering, 36
- servers, nervousness and, 540
- service providers. *See* commercial printers; imagesetters and service providers
- Set Dictionary To setting, 186
- Setup pane (Print dialog box), 648–651
- Shadow Honors Other
  - Effects checkbox, 370
- shadows. *See also* drop shadows
  - Inner Shadow effect, 370–371
  - shadow cursors, 6
- Shape pop-up menu, 375
- shapes
  - converting to text frames, 136
  - corner options, 341–342
  - drawing basic shapes, 322–323
  - feathering, 375
  - fills. *See* fills
  - gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills
  - transparency. *See* transparency
- Share My Screen option, 735
- shared destinations for
  - hyperlinks, 710
- Sharp feather corner option, 372
- Shear dialog box, 588
- Shear tool, 17, 18, 24, 587
- shearing
  - audio or video frames, 727
  - as not just for wool, 586
  - objects, 24
  - Shear tool, 17
  - skewing character
    - formatting, 249, 250
  - skewing path text, 445
- Sheet setting, 187
- Shoggoth, 294
- short words, turning off
  - hyphenation for, 285
- shortcuts
  - applying colors, 603
  - baseline shift settings, 249
  - captioning figures, 451
  - Color panel, 616–617
  - contact sheets, 460
  - context menus, 29
  - creating, 29–32
  - cursor, moving through
    - text, 190–192
  - Fill selector, 603
  - filtering Quick Apply list, 451
  - finding or replacing
    - text, 217–218
  - focus in panels, 9–10
  - font styles, 239
  - Gap tool, 596
  - increasing or decreasing
    - font size, 239–240
  - Kerning, 245
  - keyboard shortcuts, 2, 29–32
  - leading, 242
  - modifier keys, 190–192
  - most frequently-used
    - shortcut, 32
- object styles, 439
  - page navigation, 67
  - point size adjustments, 239–240
  - Presentation Mode, 735
  - previewing separations, 672
  - problems when entering text, 2
  - Quick Apply feature, 448–451
  - saving sets of, 30
  - scaling objects, 582
  - scripts, 698
  - selecting objects, 106–107
  - selecting text, 190–192
  - Stroke selector, 603
  - tables, 400–401
  - Tools panel, 18
  - type styles, 238
  - View menu shortcuts, 63
  - workspaces, 35
- Show All Layers command, 125
- Show Content Offset option, 576
- Show Guides command or
  - option, 110, 128
- Show Hidden Characters
  - command, 163, 192
- Show/Hide Fields actions, 717
- Show/Hide Notes button, 198
- Show Import Options
  - option, 181, 459
- Show Layer icon or option,
  - 125–126, 128, 489
- Show List of Problem Tags Before
  - Place option, 188–189
- Show Master Page Overlay
  - option, 89
- Show menu, Glyphs panel, 158
- Show Prefix/Suffix In option, 206
- Show Subset button, 28
- Show Tagged Frames
  - command, 531
- Show Text Snippets command, 531
- Show Text Threads
  - command, 136, 147
- Show Thumbnails command, 80
- Show Thumbnails on Place
  - option, 37–38
- Show Transformation
  - Values option, 38
- Show Vertically command, 80
- showing. *See* displaying
- Shrink animation, 728
- shrinking
  - panels to title bars, 10
  - text frames, 154–155
- shuffling pages, 83–86
- side heads, self-experimentation
  - approach to, 436
- Signature Size pop-up menu, 668
- Simulate Overprint option,
  - 496, 509, 654, 658
- Simulate Paper Color option, 636
- single-cell tables, 399
- Single Line Composer, 284
- single quotes (’), 39, 50
- Single Word Justification
  - option, 289
- Size/Leading field, 46–47
- size of panel rows, 15
- size of type. *See* point size of type
- SJIS encoding, 233
- Skew path text option, 445
- skewing. *See* shearing
- skins, controller, 725
- Skip button, 200
- Skip by Leading option, 44–45
- slanting vertical axis of
  - type. *See* shearing
- slashed zero characters, 258
- slide shows
  - animation tips, 729
  - buttons for, 718
  - multi-state objects, 721–723
  - Presentation Mode, 735
- slugs, 71–72

- small caps formatting, 42, 247, 250–251, 258
  - Small Caps text effect, 42
  - small panel rows, 15, 124
  - Smart Cursors, 117
  - smart cursors, 38
  - Smart Dimensions, 118
  - Smart Dimensions option, 50
  - Smart Guide options, 49, 50
  - Smart Guides, 108, 117–119
  - Smart Spacing, 118
  - Smart Text Reflow option, 41
  - Smart transformations, 118
  - Smooth point operation, 340
  - Smooth tool, 17, 18, 22, 335–336
  - smoothing paths, 17, 22, 335–336
  - Snap to Document Grid
    - command, 120
  - Snap to Guides command, 108–110, 119
  - Snap to Zone setting, 48
  - snapping objects
    - disabling, 110
    - to grid or guides, 108–110, 119–120
    - guides to objects, 113
    - layout adjustments and, 103
    - into position, 13, 48
    - Smart Guides, 117
    - snap zones, 48, 103, 108–110
  - Snippet Import options, 60
  - snippets, 60, 516, 531
  - social gatherings, avoiding
    - EPS files at, 461
  - Soft Light transparency
    - blending mode, 363–364
  - “soft proofing,” 625, 634–636
  - softening
    - drop shadows, 370
    - feathering, 372–375
  - solid leading, 243
  - Sonar Bookends, 552
  - Sort Entries in Alphabetical
    - Order option, 548–549
  - sorting
    - bookmarks in panel, 715
    - cell or table styles, 415
    - forcing sort order of
      - index entries, 554
    - index entries, 562
    - paragraph style names, 302
    - paragraphs, 696
    - tables of content, 548–549
  - SortParagraphs example
    - script, 696
  - Sound action, 717
  - sound files. *See* audio files
  - source cross references, 177
  - source profiles, color
    - management, 636
  - Space Between Footnotes
    - option, 208
  - Space Between Pages
    - option, 668–670
  - spacebands, 288
  - spaces. *See also* spacing;
    - tabs and tab stops
  - entering, 156
  - importing text-only files
    - containing, 186
  - inserting special characters, 155, 156
  - removing underlining, 252–253
  - removing with GREP
    - methods, 227, 229
  - showing hidden characters, 192
- spaceship *Nadesico*, 366
- spacing. *See also* spaces
  - before and after paragraphs, 143, 144–145, 272
  - around above-line objects, 430
  - between footnotes, 207–208
  - Gap tool, 20, 595–597
  - grids of objects, 593
  - inset spacing, text frames, 139
  - Kerning, 244–246
  - leading adjustments and, 272
  - letter spacing, 287–289
  - multi-line composer, 283–285
  - multiple columns and, 144–145
  - between objects, 594–597
  - between pages, 668–670
  - Smart Spacing, 118
  - spacebands, 288
  - spaces between words, 40–41
  - in Story Editor, 54
  - word spacing, 246, 287–289
- Spacing options, path
  - text, 44810451
- Span Columns dialog box, 144
- spanning columns with
  - headlines, 143–145
- special characters. *See also* glyphs
  - Align To Character
    - tab stops, 269
  - discretionary hyphens, 287
  - displaying, 192
  - entering symbols, 156
  - escaping, 225
  - finding and replacing, 216
  - GREP methods and, 223–225
  - hanging punctuation, 318–320
  - hidden characters, 192, 216, 223–225
  - inserting, 155–159
  - list of, 156
  - mixing and matching in
    - glyph sets, 159
  - nested style metacharacters, 278
  - punctuation in index
    - entries, 565
  - shortcuts for entering, 156
  - sorting index entries with, 562
  - symbol fonts, 239
  - wildcard metacharacters, 216
- Specify Formatting to
  - Find button, 218
- spectrum, color, 600
- speed
  - animation, 728, 732
  - applications. *See* performance and speed
- spellchecking. *See* checking spelling
- Spelling Preferences dialog box, 51
- Spine zero point option, 45
- spines for book covers, 81
- Spirograph drawings, 702–703
- Split Cell Horizontally or Split Cell
  - Vertically commands, 399
- split footnotes, 208, 209
- SplitStory example script, 696
- splitting
  - columns under headlines, 143–145
  - footnotes, 208, 209
  - paths, 26, 334
  - points, 26
  - stories, 696
  - table cells, 399
- spot colors. *See also* process colors
  - aliasing, 622
  - choosing color model, 601–602
  - converting to process, 613, 621
  - creating, 601–602, 605
  - half-tone screen settings, 656–657
  - in InDesign publications, 601
  - Ink Manager, 621

- inks, turning on or off, 657
- mixed ink swatches, 610–613
- printed color samples, 625–626
- printing, 600
- transparency issues, 676
- spreading drop shadows, 370
- spreads (page spreads). *See also*
  - master spreads and pages
  - arranging pages, 83–86
  - duplicating, 83
  - exporting in PDF files, 502
  - flattener presets, applying, 679–680
  - hiding master items, 100
  - island spreads, 84–85
  - labels of, 82
  - layout options, 77–78, 101–104
  - pasteboard not shared
    - between, 4
  - printer spreads, 502, 647
  - printing on single sheet, 647
  - reader's spreads, 502, 647
  - rotating, 89–90
  - ruler guides, creating, 112–113
  - selecting, 81–82
  - shuffling pages, 83–86
  - Smart Text Reflow
    - option and, 41
  - zero point, 45
- Spreads option (printer spreads), 502, 647
- spreadsheets, 60, 186–188, 385, 480
- spring-loaded tools, 19
- square brackets ( [ ] ), 85, 257
- squares, 22, 322, 341–342
- sRGB profile, 628, 637, 639
- stacking order of objects
  - changing layer stacking order, 129
  - copying objects on multiple layers, 128
  - guides and, 49
  - master page items, 130
  - moving ruler guides between layers, 114–115
  - multi-state objects, 721
  - pasting layers between publications, 130
  - path operations and, 338
  - rearranging stacks and objects, 120–122
  - selecting overlapping objects, 106
  - sending objects forward or backward, 120–122
  - sending objects to front or back, 120–122
  - text wrap and, 45, 121–122, 128
- stacking panels, 13–14
- Stair Step path text
  - option, 445, 446
- StandardSoundPoster.jpg file, 727
- Star Inset field, 23
- star targets, 666
- Start At option, 206
- Start field (grid), 47
- Start Indicator (text on paths), 443
- Start Paragraph pop-up menu, 292
- starting list numbers, 295
- starting page numbers, 71, 90
- states
  - adding objects to, 722
  - buttons, 719–720
  - creating, 722
  - multi-state objects, 721–723
- static captions, 451, 453–454
- stationery, 73, 76, 81
- status of stories, 474
- Step and Repeat dialog
  - box, 117, 578
- stitching, avoiding, 679
- stone measurement units, 45
- Stop Color pop-up menu, 608
- Stop on Page Turn option, 726
- stopping animation, 718
- stops. *See* tabs and tab stops
- stories. *See also* linked text frames
  - adding new text frames, 150, 151
  - Adobe InCopy and, 199–200
  - copying and pasting linked text frames, 150, 151
  - deleting linked text frames, 149–150, 151
  - EPUB layout, 521–522
  - exporting, 190, 518, 695
  - finding text in locked stories, 214
  - flowing text between text frames, 145–149, 152–154
  - InCopy stories, 474
  - limiting searches to, 214
  - merging, 148
  - page ranges for index entries, 556
  - selecting, 40
  - Smart Text Reflow
    - option and, 41
  - status, 474
  - Story Editor, 54–55, 193–196
  - Story panel, 11
  - story windows, 54–55, 194
  - tables in, 383
  - threading, 145–149
- Story Editor
  - drag and drop editing in, 41
  - notes in, 52, 197–199
  - overview, 193–196
  - preferences, 54–55, 195–196
  - tracking changes, 53–54, 196–197
  - vertical depth display, 195
- Story Editor Preferences dialog
  - box, 54–55, 195–196
- Story panel, 11. *See also* stories
- story windows, 54–55, 194
- straddle heads, 143–145
- straight lines, 22
- straight quotes (“”), 183
- streaming audio, 725
- streaming video, 724
- strikethrough formatting, 254–255
- Strikethrough Options
  - dialog box, 254
- strings
  - defined, 212
  - finding and replacing with GREP methods, 223–228
  - formatting attributes, 218–221
- striped strokes, 347, 350–353
- Stroke button, 18
- Stroke option, 46
- Stroke panel, 11, 343–353. *See also* strokes
- Stroke selector, 18, 27, 603
- Stroke Styles dialog box, 350–353

## strokes

0 setline-width strokes, 343  
 after path operations, 338  
 alignment, 344  
 alternating, in tables, 409–410  
 applying effects to, 367–368  
 applying to table cells, 401–404  
 arrowheads and tailfeathers, 346–347  
 cap options, 345  
 cell styles, 412  
 colors, 603  
 copying with Eyedropper tool, 24, 25  
 dashed lines, 345, 346  
 displaying information about, 28  
 editing, 348–349  
 finding and replacing in objects, 133–134  
 gap color and tint, 347, 348  
 join options, 344, 345  
 layered strokes, 345–346  
 line weight, 343–344  
 measurement units, 46  
 miter limit setting, 344–345  
 overprinting, 347  
 overview, 342–343  
 paragraph rules, 380  
 patterns, 350–353  
 removing from paths, 349  
 scaling, 23, 582  
 striped strokes, 347, 350–353  
 Stroke button, 18  
 Stroke panel, 11, 343–353  
 Stroke selector, 27, 603  
 stroke styles, 350–353  
 stroking characters, 262, 263  
 swapping stroke and fill colors, 603  
 table styles, 414  
 transparency flattener and, 679  
 Structure view, 531. *See also* XML  
 stupid things to do with carriage returns, 272  
 really bad justification decisions, 44  
 with tabs, 268  
 talk-radio-style advice on tiling, 651

with text variables, 166  
 unnamed colors, 602  
 “With Power Comes Responsibility” speeches, 361, 367  
 style groups, 315–317, 416  
 Style Mapping dialog box, 185  
 Style option (text variables), 164  
 Style pop-up menu (text variables), 172  
 Style Settings list, 439  
 style source documents, 541  
 styles. *See also* formatting  
   Buzzword files, 189  
   cell styles, 411–412  
   character. *See* character styles  
   compared to formatting, 301, 302  
   compared to presets, 72–73  
   copying between publications, 317–318  
   deleting text with specified styles, 222  
   finding and changing by style, 218–221  
   flattener presets, 677–680  
   floppy disk icons, 318  
   hyperlinks, 711  
   in imported text, 184, 185, 188  
   importing from other documents, 317–318  
   index style settings, 564–565  
   links between text and style definitions, 302, 305, 440–441  
   mapping for imported files, 185  
   mapping styles and XML tags, 530  
   nested, 276–283  
   object styles. *See* object styles  
   page range options for index entries, 554–556  
   paragraph. *See* paragraph styles  
   parent-child style relationships, 314–315, 439  
   print presets, 664–666  
   Quick Apply feature, 448–451  
   saving in libraries, 318  
   stroke styles, 350–353  
   style groups, 315–317, 416

style source documents, 541  
 synchronizing book documents, 541–542  
 table styles, 411–416  
 tables of content styles, 551  
 unused, 184  
 stylistic sets, 259  
 sub-bookmarks, 715  
 sub-columns, 145  
 sub-lists, 297  
 subexpressions finding and changing with GREP methods, 225–226  
   marking, 225–226  
 “Submit” buttons, 721  
 subsampling images, 506  
 subscript formatting and type, 42, 249, 255–256  
 subselecting objects, 107–108, 131  
 Subset Fonts Below option, 510–511  
 Subset Fonts option, 36  
 subsets of fonts, 36, 498, 510–511  
 subsets of libraries, 28  
 substituted fonts, 43, 239  
 substituted glyphs, 228  
 Subtract path operation, 338, 339  
 subtracting portions of merged shapes, 338, 339  
 Suggested Corrections list, 200  
 summary of PDF export options, 513  
 Summary pane (Print dialog box), 664  
 Super Autoflow icon, 152, 153, 154  
 superior formatting, 255–256, 259. *See also* superscript formatting and type  
 superscript formatting and type, 42, 249, 255–256  
 Suppress Page Range option, 556  
 Swap Fill and Stroke icon, 18, 26  
 swapping. *See* switching  
 Swash feature, OpenType fonts, 258  
 swashes, 257  
 swatch books, 625–626  
 swatch libraries, 602, 606  
 Swatch Options dialog box, 613

swatches

- adding colors
  - from Illustrator, 607
  - new unnamed colors, 605
  - from other publications, 606–607
  - from swatch libraries, 606
- applying colors
  - to objects, 618–619
  - to strokes or fills, 353–354, 603
- Color Picker, 617–618
- color swatch books, 625–626
- creating, 603–607
- deleting from publications, 515, 614–615
- duplicating, 616
- editing, 613
- gradient swatches, 356–358, 607–610
- libraries, 602, 606
- merging, 615–616
- mixed ink groups, 611–613
- mixed ink swatches, 610–613
- overview, 600–601
- reordering in panel, 614
- swatch books, 625–626
- Swatches panel, 11, 603–607
- tint swatches, 607, 608
- using in other documents, 606–607

Swatches panel, 11, 603–607.

*See also* swatches

SWF files

- animation, 727–728
- audio and video in, 723–727
- buttons in, 715–721
- exporting, 737–739
- exporting animation
  - for PDF, 732
- hyperlinks to, 709–710
- importing, 723
- interactive features in, 706
- page transition effects, 725, 726, 733–734
- Presentation Mode, 735
- previewing, 734–735
- transparency in, 738

switching

- colors in mixed inks, 613
- fill and stroke colors in
  - panel, 18, 26
- font stylistic sets, 259
- to Hand tool, 65–66
- to Selection tool, 19
- Story Editor windows, 194–195
- tools temporarily, 18, 19

SWOP profiles and inks, 627, 629, 637

symbol fonts, 239

symbols. *See* special characters

symmetrical point operations, 340

Synchronize feature, 536, 541–542

synchronizing Adobe Suite
 

- applications, 626

synchronizing book documents, 536, 541–542

system failures, 77

## T

T-squares, ancient page
 

- layout and, 17

T1 symbol in font names, 239

tab characters. *See* tabs

and tab stops

tab-delimited text, 188, 523

tab key, 716, 719

tabbed panels, 13–14

tabbed publication display, 38

table cells. *See* cells in tables

table numbers, 297

Table of Contents dialog box, 545–551. *See also* tables of contents

Table of Contents Text option, 183

Table option, 187

Table Options dialog box, 391, 401, 409–410

Table panel, 11

Table Styles panel, 415

tables

- adding columns or
  - rows, 395–397
- borders of tables, 409
- boxes around paragraphs
  - and, 399, 400
- cells. *See* cells in tables
- columns. *See* columns in tables
- components of, 383

- context menu options, 389
- Control panel options, 390
- converting tables and text, 183–184, 384, 386, 387
- copying from other
  - programs, 385
- creating, 384–386
- cursors for table editing, 389
- deleting rows or columns, 397–398
- deleting tables, 397–398
- formatting, 183, 401–410
- graphics, placing in
  - cells, 388, 390
- header and footer rows, 390–392
- importing
  - Excel data, 187
  - from other programs, 183–184, 385
  - preserving or removing
    - formatting from
      - imports, 183–184
  - styles, 416
  - Word tables, 183–184
- keyboard shortcuts, 400–401
- local formatting, 409
- merging cells, 398–399
- numbering, 297
- options, 391, 410
- overriding styles, 415
- overview, 383–384
- resizing, 392–394
- rotating cells, 399, 400
- rows. *See* rows (tables)
- selecting elements, 389
- single-cell tables, 399
- splitting cells, 399
- Table panel, 11
- table styles, 411–416

tables of contents. *See also* books

- alphabetizing entries, 548–549
- as bookmarks, 715
- bookmarks in PDF
  - files, 504, 714
- building, 550
- characters between entry
  - and page number, 548
- creating, 545–548
- dummy text or tags in, 550
- EPUB layout, 522
- hidden layers, including
  - headings from, 549

- hyperlinking in PDF files, 504
- importing in Word/
  - RTF files, 183
- including entire books, 546
- indenting entry levels, 549
- non-printing frames,
  - including, 550
- options, 545–550
- overview, 545
- page number options, 548
- paragraph numbers in, 549–550
- run-in headings, 549
- updating, 550
- tabs and tab stops
  - automating tab setting, 696
  - in bulleted lists, 293
  - centered tab stops, 268–269
  - decimal tab stops, 269
  - defined, 267–268
  - editing tab stops, 270
  - entering in table cells, 388
  - hanging indents and, 266–267
  - history of, 267
  - left tab stops, 268–269
  - overview, 267–268
  - removing tab stops, 270
  - repeating tab stops, 270–271
  - right tab stops, 268–269, 272
  - rules for using, 268
  - setting tab stops, 269–272
  - tab characters
    - Align To Character
      - tab stops, 269
    - defined, 267–268
    - displaying, 192
    - entering in table cells, 388
    - importing Excel files
      - containing, 187
    - importing text-only files
      - containing, 186
    - showing hidden
      - characters, 192
  - tab leaders, 271–272
  - in tables of contents, 548
  - Tabs panel, 11, 14, 266, 269
  - TabUtilities example script, 696
  - types of tab stops, 268–269
- Tabs panel, 11, 14, 266, 269–272.
  - See also* tabs and tab stops
- Tabular Lining numeral
  - formatting, 260
- Tabular Oldstyle numeral
  - formatting, 260
- TabUtilities example script, 696
- tagged PDF files, 502–503, 736
- tagged text. *See also* XML
  - errors, listing during
    - import, 188–189
  - exporting, 190
  - formatting text between
    - tags, 226, 229
  - importing, 188–189
  - InDesign tagged text,
    - 181, 230–234
  - overview, 230–232
  - PageMaker tags, converting
    - to InDesign, 234
  - tables of contents and, 550
  - tag contents, 233
  - tag structure, 233
  - tagged PDF files, 502–503, 736
  - uses for, 232
  - viewing in text editors, 232
- Tagged Text Import Options
  - dialog box, 188–189
- Tagged Text.pdf file, 232
- tagging paragraphs with
  - styles, 302, 309–310
- tags. *See* tagged text; XML
- Tags panel, 532. *See also* XML
- tailfeathers, 346–347
- talk-radio-style advice
  - on tiling, 651
- Target Layer icon, 124, 126
- target layers, 124, 126
- target profiles, color
  - management, 636–637
- targeted dictionaries, 202
- targeting pages, 81
- TeacupSoftware, 523
- technical-style numbering, 297
- temperature of lighting, 625
- templates
  - for merged data, 524–526
  - opening, 73
  - saving documents as, 76
- temporary files, 60
- testing
  - button rollovers and states, 720
  - Preview panel, 734–735
  - scripts, 702
- text. *See also* text files; text
  - frames; text variables
  - Adobe InCopy and, 199–200
  - aligning. *See* aligning text
  - anchors for hyperlinks, 710
  - anti-aliasing setting, 57
  - applying colors to, 618
  - applying effects to, 367–368
  - attaching to paths. *See* path text
  - baseline shift, 42, 47,
    - 248–249, 255–256
  - blurring, 375–376
  - in buttons, 719
  - captions, 451–454
  - character formatting. *See*
    - character formatting
  - character styles. *See*
    - character styles
  - characters. *See* characters
  - cleaning with GREP
    - methods, 227, 229
  - colored text, printing as
    - black, 654–655
  - compressing, 507
  - conditional text, 209–213
  - converting
    - notes to text, 199
    - tables to text, 386, 387
    - text to notes, 199
    - text to outlines, 420–422, 679
    - text to tables, 384, 386
    - text variable instances to
      - text, 168, 169–170
  - copying on Clipboard, 61
  - cross references, 177–180
  - custom text in text
    - variables, 164
  - deleting text with specified
    - styles, 222
  - Display Performance
    - preferences, 55–58
  - dummy text, 159–161
  - editing. *See* editing text
  - embedding graphics in.
    - See* inline frames
  - endnotes, 209
  - entering. *See* entering text
  - in exported HTML files, 517
  - exporting, 190
  - exporting to Flash files, 739
  - finding and replacing. *See*
    - finding and replacing

flowing between text  
     frames, 152–154  
 formatting attributes, 218–221  
 glyphs, 43, 44, 157–159,  
     257, 288–289  
 highlight effect, 253–254  
 highlighting composition  
     problems, 42–45, 290  
 as hyperlink destination, 712  
 importing. *See* importing text  
 indenting, 265–267, 549  
 insertion point, 155  
 kerning. *See* kerning  
 leading. *See* leading  
 links to, 60  
 measurement units, 46  
 non-Latin, 42  
 overview, 135–136  
 paragraph formatting. *See*  
     paragraph formatting  
 pasting into publications,  
     61, 136, 180–181  
 path text, 442–448  
 pesky, 309  
 placing, 152–154, 181–182  
 removing formatting from, 188  
 replacing. *See* finding  
     and replacing  
 selecting. *See* selecting text  
 size and scaling, 36–37,  
     46, 239–240  
 Smart Text Reflow option, 41  
 spacing. *See* spacing  
 Story Editor, 54, 193–196  
 superscript and subscript,  
     255–256  
 SWF file composition, 738  
 tables of contents. *See*  
     tables of contents  
 text frames. *See* text frames  
 tracking changes, 53–54  
 transparency flattener and, 679  
 unplaced text. *See* overset text  
 variables. *See* text variables  
 word, line, or paragraph  
     counts, 27  
 XML tags, 532  
 text anchors as hyperlink  
     destinations, 710, 712  
 Text As Black option, 654–655  
 Text Before and Text After  
     options (captions), 451–452

Text Before and Text After  
     options (text variables), 164  
 text blocks or boxes. *See*  
     text frames  
 Text Display Options  
     settings, 195–196  
 text editors, 232  
 text files. *See also* Microsoft  
     Word files  
     cleaning with GREP  
         methods, 227, 229  
     creating links to, 480  
     dragging into publications, 136  
     formatting text in, 232  
     importing, 181–182, 185–186  
     InDesign Interchange (IDML)  
         format, 515–516  
     InDesign Interchange  
         (INX) format, 515  
     linked files, 189  
     PMD files, 667  
     snippets, 516, 531  
     XML files, 530  
 text flow icons, 152–154  
 Text Frame Options dialog  
     box, 138–143, 426  
 text frames  
     adding to stories, 150, 151  
     after path operations, 338  
     balancing columns, 139  
     captions, 453–454  
     columns and column  
         width, 138–139  
     converting frames to text  
         frames, 39–40, 136, 137  
     copying and pasting, 150, 151  
     creating, 21, 71, 136–137, 147  
     creating automatically on  
         master pages, 71  
     custom baseline grids, 273  
     deleting linked text frames,  
         149–150, 151  
     dummy text in, 159–161  
     entering text, 155–161  
     first baseline position, 139–141  
     formatting text in, 236–237  
     hanging text outside frames, 276  
     importing text into, 182, 189  
     inline. *See* inline frames  
     inset spacing, 139  
     linking, 146–149  
     merging stories, 148

options, 138–143  
 order of linked frames, 149  
 in and out ports, 145–146, 148  
 overset text, 146, 148, 149  
 placing text, 150, 152–154  
 replacing text with  
     imported text, 181  
 resizing text in, 239–240  
 scaling, and point size  
     of type, 36–37  
 shrinking to fit contents,  
     154–155  
 Smart Text Reflow  
     option and, 41  
 tables in, 383–384  
 text wrap, 45, 141, 142, 416–420  
 transformations, text  
     attributes and, 571, 572  
 unlinking, 149, 150  
 vertical justification  
     settings, 141–143  
 Text Import Options dialog  
     box, 182, 185–186  
 Text option, 738  
 text place icon  
     creating text frames, 136, 137  
     importing text, 68, 182  
     linking text frames, 147  
     overview, 152–154  
 Text Size option, 46  
 text variables  
     captions, 454  
     compared to autocorrect, 170  
     conflicting, 168  
     converting instances to  
         text, 168, 169–170  
     copying, 166–168  
     creating, 163–166  
     customizing, 166, 170–171  
     deleting, 168  
     displaying, 163  
     editing, 166  
     examples, 170–177  
     importing, 166–168  
     inserting, 163  
     instances of, 161, 168, 169–170  
     loading, 166–168  
     metadata in captions,  
         162, 164, 174–177  
     overview, 161–162  
     placeholder text, 170  
     preset, 163–166

- previewing, 167
  - pronouncing aloud, 170
  - replacing, 168
  - updating book numbering with, 544
- Text Variables dialog box, 163–166, 171
- text wrap
  - around anchored objects, 435
  - around objects in middle of columns, 44
  - editing text wrap
    - boundary, 419, 420
  - ignoring, 141, 142, 419
  - inverting, 418, 420
  - layers and, 121–122, 128
  - leading and, 45
  - options, 416–420
  - text frames beneath, 45, 121–122
- Text Wrap panel, 11, 416
- Text Wrap Only Affects Text
  - Beneath option, 45, 121–122
- Text Wrap panel, 11, 416
- TextWrangler, 667
- Theme pop-up menu, 54
- threads, text, 146–149. *See also* linked text frames
- Three-D Ribbon path text
  - option, 445, 446
- thresholds
  - clipping paths, 493
  - grid and guide view thresholds, 47, 110, 116, 119, 120
- throwing computers out
  - of windows, 437
- Thumbnail view (Library panel), 28
- thumbnails. *See also* proxies and proxy images
  - colors of, 80–81
  - exporting PDF files
    - containing, 502
  - interactive PDF files, 736
  - Library panel, 28
  - pages, 80
  - place cursors, 37–38
  - printing, 650
- Thumbnails setting, 650
- TIFF images
  - applying colors to, 618–619
  - bitmap files, 460
  - choosing graphic file
    - formats, 462
  - display performance settings, 56
  - importing bitmapped
    - images, 466–468
  - print settings, 658–660
  - strengths and weaknesses of, 462
- tildes (~), 202
- Tile setting, 650–651
- tiling
  - printing tiles, 650–651
  - windows, 7–8
- time
  - text variables, 165, 170
  - time zones, 165
- time zones, 165
- Timing panel, 729, 731–732
- tints
  - creating, 607, 608
  - gaps in patterned
    - strokes, 347, 348
  - halftone screening settings, 656
  - mixed ink groups, 611–613
  - mixed ink swatches, 610–613
  - overview, 602
  - tint builds, 656
  - tint swatches, 607, 608, 615
  - tinting paragraphs, 380–381
- title bars, 4, 10
- Title option, indexes, 562–563
- title tab, 3
- TLF text option, 739
- To End of Document option, 556
- To End of Section option, 556
- To End of Story option, 556
- To Next Style Change option, 554
- To Next Use Of Style option, 555
- To Path options, path text, 448
- tolerances for clipping paths, 493
- Tool Hints panel, 19
- tools
  - hidden, 18. *See also* Tools panel
  - spring-loaded, 19
  - switching temporarily, 19
  - Tool Hints panel, 19
- Tools panel
  - changing layout, 38
  - display arrangements, 38
  - grand tour of, 17–28
  - hidden tools, 18
  - illustrated, 3
  - keyboard shortcuts, 18
  - preferences settings, 38
  - shortcuts, 11
  - tooltips, 37, 52, 721, 726
- Top vertical justification
  - method, 142, 143
- torus shapes, 333
- Track Changes panel, 196–197
- Track Changes preferences, 53–54
- tracking (spacing). *See also* kerning
  - highlighting custom
    - tracking, 44
  - multi-line composition, 283–285
  - overview, 246–248
  - range kerning, 243, 246
  - removing, 244
  - tips and tricks, 247–248
- tracking changes
  - imported Word file change
    - tracking, 184–185
  - overview, 196–197
  - preferences, 53–54
- trademark symbols, 249
- Transform Again command, 589–592
- Transform Again Individually
  - command, 590
- Transform Content option, 571
- Transform panel. *See also* transformations
  - basic techniques, 568–576
  - math anxiety and, 573
  - moving with, 576
  - Proxy, 568–569, 573
  - rotating with, 584, 585
  - scaling with, 580–581
  - shearing with, 587–588
- Transform Sequence Again
  - command, 590
- Transform Sequence Again Individually
  - command, 590



transformations. *See also*

Transform panel

aligning objects, 593–594

basic techniques, 568–576

buttons for, 575

centers of transformation,  
568–569, 573

distributing objects, 594–597

duplicating while

transforming, 574

frames without contents, 570

Free Transform tool, 17, 18,  
24, 578, 580, 584

hiding objects, 598

lines and line segments, 569

locking object positions, 597

moving objects, 576–578

multiple objects, 571–572

panel display of angles and  
percentages, 575

path and frame contents,  
569–570, 575

points, 569, 570

preventing transformation, 597

Proxy, selecting points on, 573

reflecting objects, 586

repeating transformations,  
589–592

rotating objects, 23, 583–585

scaling objects, 23, 571,  
572, 578–582

Selection tool, 580

shearing objects, 586–589

Smart Dimensions, 118

text frames, text attributes  
and, 571, 572

transformation tools, 17

Transformations Are

Totals option, 575

transitions

exporting to Flash files, 739

page transitions, 733–734, 737

playing videos or sounds on  
page load, 725, 726

transparency. *See also* flattener

Acrobat Reader and, 501

Adobe PDF Print Engine  
and, 361

AI files, 470–471

alpha channels in imported  
graphics, 467

animated objects, 730

applying, 361–362, 364–366

audio or video frames, 727

background and foreground  
colors and, 362, 470–471

blending modes, 363–364, 368

choosing file formats and, 463

clipping paths and, 491

compared to Photoshop's  
features, 361

compromise and, 675

displaying on screen, 57, 465

drop shadows and, 368

Effects panel, 11, 362, 364

EPS graphics and, 499

exporting graphics  
with, 499, 511

Flash files, 739

importing files with, 470–471

InDesign's management  
of, 360–361

indicator, 79

Isolate Blending option, 365

Knockout Group option,

365–366

PDF files and, 470–471, 511

PostScript support for, 673–674

previewing settings, 680–681

printing transparent  
objects, 360–361

removing, 376

SWF files, 738

Transparency slider, 57

tricks and guidelines, 675–676

vector graphics and, 673–674

Transparency Blend Space

setting, 362, 676

Transparency Flattener Presets

Options dialog box, 677–679

Transparency Flattener settings,

361, 499, 663–664

Transparency panel. *See* Effects

panel; transparency

Transparency slider, 57

Transparent Background

option, 470–471

Transverse setting, 648

trapping

automatic trapping

methods, 622–623

manual trapping methods,  
622–623

overview, 622–623

previewing, 673

Print dialog box settings, 655

Trapping pop-up menu, 655

tri-fold brochures, 668–669

triangles

converting objects to  
triangles, 340

in ports and out ports, 146

in tool icons, 18

yellow triangle icon with  
exclamation mark, 473

triggering

animation, 728

hidden buttons, 720

trims, cropping PDF files to, 470

Triple Click to Select a Line

option, 40, 191

troubleshooting

booklet imposition, 670

books, 539

caption metadata, 454

compressed PPDs, 643

converting bullets or

numbers to paths, 422

converting text to paths, 422

corrupt data, removing  
from files, 515

deleting index markers, 552

deleting unwanted color  
swatches, 515

downloading fonts, 661

embedding fonts, 498

finding transparent

elements, 680

imported video or

audio files, 723

inline frame limitations, 424

keyboard shortcuts on Mac

platform, 397*n*

leading, 242

lurking errant fonts, 261–262

master page items and

layer items, 130

moving Control panel, 14

moving Tabs panel, 14

numbering order, 298

out of space in table cells, 386

page transitions don't

appear, 734

paragraph rules and

screen redraw, 381

placing Word files, 185  
 preferences settings change  
   back, 35–36  
 recovery data, 59–60, 77  
 relinked graphics, 61  
 replacing special characters, 216  
 style groups, 316–317  
 style names in weird order, 302  
 styles not automatically  
   applied, 304  
 synchronization, 542  
 text entry and keyboard  
   shortcuts, 2  
 text variables in running  
   headers, 173  
 transparency and  
   printing, 675–676  
 unnamed colors, 602–603  
 VBScripts, 692  
 TrueType fonts, 239, 688  
 Trumatch swatch books  
   and library, 626  
 TT symbol in font names, 239  
*tuchus*, pains in the, 611  
 turkeys, etiquette and, 623  
 turning pages  
   curled page effect, 738  
   jumping to pages, 67  
   Page field and buttons, 5  
   Pages panel, 82  
   PDF and SWF page transition  
     effects, 725, 726  
 Twilight Zone of page layout, 377  
 twisty triangle icon, 474  
 two-position rollovers, 720  
 two-sided printing, 671  
 two-state buttons, 719–720  
 TXT files, 523  
 type. *See* text  
 Type 1 fonts, 688  
 type on a path. *See* path text  
 Type on a Path Options  
   dialog box, 444–448  
 Type pop-up menu, 652  
 Type Preferences dialog  
   box, 39–41  
 Type Style menu, 238–239  
 type styles. *See also* font  
   families and fonts  
   font families and, 238–239  
   selecting, 237–239

Type tool  
   converting frames with,  
     39–40, 136, 137  
   creating frames with, 136, 137  
   creating notes, 198  
   entering text, 136, 155  
   illustrated, 18  
   overview, 17, 21  
 Type Tool Converts Frames to  
   Text Frames option, 39–40  
 typefaces. *See* font families  
   and fonts  
 typesetting systems  
   Ole’s late night stories  
     about, 235  
   tagged text and, 230–231  
   transition to desktop  
     publishing, 235–236  
 typesetting tags. *See* tagged text  
 Typical Display setting, 55, 465  
 typing. *See* entering text  
 typographers. *See* ancient  
   typographers  
 typographer’s quotes, 39, 183, 188  
 typography. *See* text

## U

u symbol, 159  
 Ultimate Impostrip, 667  
 un-underlining spaces, 252  
 unanchoring anchored  
   objects, 429–430  
 uncapitalized words or  
   sentences, 51  
 uncoated papers, 625, 632  
 uncompiled AppleScripts, 692  
 Underline Options dialog box, 254  
 underlines, 252–253  
 unequal-width columns, 111  
 unformatted tables or text, 183  
 ungrouping objects, 131  
 unheated cubicles, 422  
 Unicode encoding, 27, 159,  
   221–222, 228, 233  
 Units & Increments Preferences  
   dialog box, 6, 45–47, 239, 578  
 units of measurement. *See*  
   measurements  
 Unlink icon, 148  
 unlinking text frames, 149, 150  
 Unlock All Layers command, 126  
 unlocking  
   column guides, 112  
   item positions, 116, 597  
   layers, 126  
   ruler guides, 116  
   zero point, 7  
 Unmerge Cells command, 398  
 unnamed colors, 600–  
   603, 605, 615  
 unnamed hyperlinks, 707  
 unplaced items, removing  
   from cursor, 459  
 unplaced text. *See* overset text  
 unsaved documents, 4  
 untagged items in HTML  
   export, 518  
 unused index topics,  
   hiding, 560–561  
 unused layers, deleting, 129  
 unused styles, importing  
   in Word files, 184  
 unzipping panels to full view, 10  
 Update All Numbers  
   command, 544  
 Update Chapter & Paragraph  
   Numbers command, 544  
 Update Content in Data Fields, 529  
 Update Data Source  
   command, 530  
 Update Graphic Links in  
   Package option, 686–687  
 Update Table of Contents  
   command, 550  
 updating  
   chapter numbers, 544  
   graphic links in packages,  
     686–687  
   graphics, 61, 475  
   hyperlinks, 714  
   imported text, 189  
   indexes, 563  
   linked files, 189, 475  
   linking to new files, 475–476  
   merged data, 529–530  
   numbering, 544  
   object styles, 437  
   renumbering pages in books,  
     536, 538, 542–543  
   tables of contents, 550  
 uppercase characters, 225, 247.  
   *See also* case of characters

- URLs
  - button actions for
    - displaying, 717
  - converting to hyperlinks, 708–709
  - creating hyperlinks from, 713
  - http or rtmp, 724
  - hyperlink destinations, 709–710, 712
  - linking to videos on Web sites, 724–725
  - loading movies or sound files from, 724
  - named and unnamed hyperlinks, 707
- U.S. Web Coated or Uncoated setting, 629
- U.S. Web Coated profile, 627, 629, 637
- U.S. Web Coated SWOP setting, 627
- Use Black Point Compensation setting, 632
- “Use Cruddy Preview” option, 469
- Use Custom Baseline Grid option, 273
- Use Document Hyphenation Exceptions Only option, 687
- Use Document Profile option, 634
- Use Embedded Profile option, 686
- Use Global Light checkbox, 368
- Use Inline Input for Non-Latin text option, 42
- Use option (text variables), 164
- Use PDF’s Layer Visibility option, 490
- Use Photoshop’s Layer Visibility option, 490
- Use Photoshop’s/PDF’s Layer Visibility option, 490
- Use pop-up menu (text variables), 172
- Use Spacing field, 594
- Use TIFF or PICT Preview option, 469
- Use Typographer’s Quotes option, 39, 183, 188
- User command, 198
- user dictionary, 49–51, 50–51, 201–203
- User Dictionary preferences settings, 50–51
- user interfaces, adding with scripts, 703–704
- User Password setting (Document Open Password setting), 512
- Utah, 62
- V**
- V shapes, 340
- vaguely offensive time zone indications, 165
- variables. *See* text variables
- VB (Visual Basic), 692
- VB5 CCE (Visual Basic 5 Control Creation Edition), 692
- VBA (Visual Basic for Applications), 692
- VB.NET, 692
- VBS files, 693
- VBScript (Visual Basic Script), 692–693
- vector graphics
  - color management and, 624
  - display options, 56
  - graphic file formats, 460, 461
  - limitations of, 461
  - previewing flattener settings, 680–681
  - rasterizing, 674, 677–678, 679
  - transparency and, 673–674
- Vector Graphics slider, 56
- vendors of spelling and hyphenation dictionaries, 49
- Version Cue, 214, 479
- versions of files. *See also* InCopy creating with conditional text, 209
- Links panel information, 479
- verso pages, 71, 543
- vertical axis
  - reflecting objects, 586
  - slanting type, 249, 250
- vertical depth display, 195
- vertical justification settings, 141–143
- Vertical Margins field, 49
- vertical ruler and guides, 3, 45
- vertical scaling, 248
- Vertical Scaling field, 580, 581
- vertical scroll bar, 3
- vertically distributing objects on page, 594–597
- Video action, 717–718
- video files
  - converting to importable formats, 723
  - displaying with button actions, 717–718
  - exporting interactive documents, 737
  - exporting to Flash files, 739
  - floating windows, 726
  - importing and playing, 723–727
  - linking to Web site videos, 724–725
  - Media panel options, 725–726
  - navigation points, 726
  - options for playing, 725–726
  - in PDF files, 504, 706
  - previewing, 734–735
  - streaming video, 724
  - tooltips, 726
  - Video action, 717–718
- View and Layout option, 736
- View menu shortcuts, 63
- View Options pop-up menu, 4
- View PDF after Exporting option, 503
- View settings (Excel), 197
- view thresholds
  - grids, 47, 119, 120
  - guides, 110, 116
- View Zoom action, 718
- viewing options
  - automating in PDF files, 718
  - Excel views, importing, 197
  - grid view thresholds, 47, 119, 120
  - guides view thresholds, 110, 116
  - rotating page view, 89–90
  - View menu shortcuts, 63
  - View Options pop-up menu, 4
- vignettes. *See* gradients and gradient fills
- Visibility icon, 126
- visible spectrum, 600
- Visual Basic (VB), 692
- Visual Basic 5 Control Creation Edition, 692
- Visual Basic for Applications (VBA), 692
- Visual Basic .NET, 692
- Visual Basic Script, 692–693
- visual color perception, 600

**W**

## warnings

- Preflight warnings, 683–684

- Print Booklet warnings, 670

Warnock, John, 673

WAV files, 723

waxers, ancient page layout and, 17

## Web browsers

- browser-safe colors, 628

- previewing interactive

- documents in, 734

Web Coated Stock setting, 629

Web/Internet option (color management preset), 628

## Web-only files

- exporting InDesign pages as XHTML. *See* XHTML

- optimizing PDF files, 502

web presses, 629

Web-safe colors, 628

Web sites. *See also* XHTML

- AppleScript, 691

- button actions for

- displaying, 717

- converting URLs to

- hyperlinks, 708–709

- Daisy Consortium, 523

- Digital Editions, 522, 523

- eBooks, 522, 523

- EPUB format, 521

- hyperlinks to, 713

- InDesign scripting forum, 693

- International Color

- Consortium, 509

- Late Night Software, 692

- linking to videos, 724–725

- loading movies or sound

- files from, 724

- Ninas, 702

- optimizing PDF files, 502

- printers marks, 667

- scripting examples, 700

- trapping methods, 623

- Web-safe colors, 628

- XML information, 534

## weight

- page marks, 653

- stroke styles, 350

- stroke weight, 343–344

Weight pop-up menu, 653

werewolves, 598

## When Pasting Text and

- Tables from Other

- Applications option, 61

When Scaling options, 36–37

## When Updating Link

- pop-up menu, 490

## white space

- inserting special characters,

- 155, 156

- showing hidden characters, 192

- un-underlining spaces, 252

## white text on black

- background, 247

Whole Word option, 214

widows, preventing, 290–292

## width

- feathering and, 372

- line weight, 343–344

- scaling and, 581

Width field, 581

Width option, 372

wildcard characters, 216, 223–225

winding, 321, 324

## windows

- closing, 4, 9

- InDesign windows and

- components, 2–9

- multiple open windows, 7–9

- opening, 194

- switching, 194–195

## Windows scripting

- systems, 692–693

winged pigs, 534

wipes, 734

“With Power Comes

- Responsibility”

- speeches, 361, 367

WMF graphics, 460–461

wool, shearing and, 586

Word. *See* Microsoft Word files

word and letter spacing,

- 44, 246, 287–289

word counts, 27

## Word Import Options

- dialog box, 182–185

word spacing. *See* kerning;

- tracking

## words

- adding to user dictionary,

  - 201–202, 203

- extra spaces between, 40–41

- finding and replacing. *See*

- finding and replacing

- hyphenating, 285–287

- indexing, 553

- last word hyphenation, 286–287

- removing from user

- dictionary, 203–204

- single word justification, 289

- word and letter spacing, 44, 246

- word counts, 27

## workgroups, Book panel

- and, 540–541

Working CMYK setting, 634

## working spaces (color

- management), 628–629,

- 632–633, 636

## Working Spaces pop-up

- menus, 628–629

## Workspace pop-up menu, 4

## workspaces, saving panel

- arrangements as, 34–35

*World of Warcraft*, 689

## Wrap Around Bounding

- Box button, 417

## Wrap Around Object

- Shape button, 417

## Wrap Around Object text

- wrap, 418–419

## Wrap To options, 420

wrapping text. *See* text wrap

## WYSIWYG publishing, tagged

- text and, 230–232

**X**

## X-Acto knives, ancient

- page layout and, 17

## X and Y fields, Transform and

- Control panels, 38, 573–574

x height, 139–140, 243

X Offset and Y Offset settings, 434

x-refs (index), 557–559

## X Relative To and Y Relative

- To settings, 433

X-Rite EyeOne device, 625

XFL files. *See* Flash and FLA files

XHTML

- exporting, 518–521
- interactive features and, 706

XHTML Export Options

- dialog box, 518–521

XML. *See also* tagged text

- creating files, 530–531
- creating tags, 530–531
- displaying tag markers, 532
- elements, 531, 532
- exporting HTML with tags, 518
- exporting motion presets, 732
- exporting tags, 533–534
- generating tags, 518
- importing into InDesign
  - documents, 531, 532–533
- InDesign Interchange (IDML)
  - format, 515–516
- InDesign Interchange (INX) format, 515
- InDesign Markup format, 76
- loading tags, 530–531
- overview, 530
- page layout process
  - and, 530–531
- snippets, 516, 531
- Structure view, 531
- tagged PDF files and, 503
- tagging frames, 532
- tagging text, 532
- tags, 530
- Web site information, xi, 534
- XHTML files, 518–521

XML Import Options

- dialog box, 533

XML Structure panel, 518

XMP information, displaying, 478

XMP standard, 486

Xtensions, converted files and, 75

## Y

- years, in text variables, 165
- yellow highlighting, composition
  - problems, 43, 290
- yellow triangle icon with
  - exclamation mark, 473
- Yog-Sothoth (elder evil
  - space god), 294

## Z

- zero characters, 258
- zero point, 3, 7–8, 45, 573–574
- Zero Winding Fill Rule, 334–335
- Zip compression, 462, 507
- zipping panels into title bars, 10
- Zoom button, 3
- Zoom In or Zoom Out
  - command, 63
- Zoom tool, 18, 26, 63
- zooming in or out
  - Application Bar, 5
  - controlling with button
    - actions, 718
  - defined, 62–65
  - Hand tool, 26
  - hyperlink jumps to
    - pages and, 710
  - Power Zoom shortcut, 64, 65
  - shortcuts, 63
  - Zoom tool, 18, 26, 63